

Cheape and Good

M., G. 2.

HVSBANDRY

For the well-Ordering of all
Beasts, and Fowles, and for the
generall Cure of their Diseases.


R

Contayning the Natures, Breeding, Choise, Vse, Feeding,
and Curing of the diseases of all manner of Cattell, as *Horse,*
Oxe, Cow, Sheepe, Goates, Swine, and tame Conies,

Shewing further, the whole Art of Riding great-Horses, with the
breaking and ordering of them: and the dicting of the Running,
Hunting, and Ambling Horse, and the manner how
to vse them in their traile.

Also, approved Rules, for the Cramming and Fattning of all sorts of
Poultry and Fowles, both tame and wilde, &c. And diuers good and
well-approved Medicines for the Cure of all the diseases
in Hawkes, of what kind soeuer.

Together with the Vse and profit of Bees: the making of Fish-ponds,
and the taking of all sorts of Fish.

Gathered together for the generall good and profit of this whole
Realme, by exact and assured experience from English practises, both
certaine, easie, and cheape: differing from all former and forraine
experiments, which eyther agreed not with our Clime, or were to
too hard to come by, or ouer-costly, and to little purpose: all which
herein are auoyded. Newly corrected and Inlarged with
many excellent aditions, as may appeare
by this marke. 

The fift Edition.

L O N D O N.

Printed by *Nicholas Okes* for *JOHN HARRISON*, and are to be sold
at his shop in *Pater-noster-row*. 1631.

Cheap and Good **HVSBANDRY**

For the well-Ordering of all
 Beasts, and Fowls, and for the
 general Cure of their Diseases.

Containing the Nature, Breeding, Choice, Use, Feeding,
 and Curing of the Diseases of all manner of Cattle, as Horses,
 Oxen, Cows, Sheep, Goats, Swine, and tame Geese.

Showing further, the whole Art of Riding great Horses, with the
 picking and ordering of them; and the dressing of the Horses,
 Hunting and Ambling Horses, and the manner how
 to ride them in the manege.



Also approved Rules, for
 Feeding and Fowling, &c. &c. And other good and
 useful, &c. &c. In all the diseases
 of the same.

Together with the Names and parts of Beasts; the making of skin-boots,
 and the making of all sorts of Fish.

Granted together for the general good and profit of this whole
 Kingdom, exact and strict observation to be kept in all English practices both
 within seas, and abroad: nothing from all former and former
 ordinances, which either agreed not with our Charter, or were so
 repugnant, or contrary, or inconsistent with the Statutes in that behalf
 made, that they should be observed, or in any wise
 put in execution, as may appear.

by the Statute of
 the 1st Edition.

A.D. 1611.

Printed by Nicholas & Aaron Harrison, and sold
 at his shop in Patern-hole-row. 1611.



TO THE RIGHT HONOURABLE, AND

most truly ennobled with all inward and
outward Vertues, RICHARD SACKVILE,
Baron of Buckhurst, and Earle
of Dorset, &c.



Although the monstrous shapes
of Bookes (Right Honourable
and best ennobled Lord) haue
with their disguised and vnpro-
fitable vizard-like faces, halfe
scared euen Vertue her selfe
from that ancient defence and patronage, (which in
former ages) most Nobly she imployed, to preserve
them from Envy: yet so much I know the largenesse
of your worthy breast is endued with wisdom, cou-
rage, and bounty, that notwithstanding the vanities
of our ignorant Writers, you will be pleased out of

The Epistle Dedicatory.

your Noble Spirit, fauourably to behold whatsoeuer shall bring a publicke good to our Countrey; at which end I haue onely aymed in this small Booke. In which hauing runne farre from the way or tract of other Writers in this nature, yet I doubt not but your Honour shall finde my path both more easie, more certaine, and more safe then any; nay, by much, farre lesse difficult or dangerous to walke in. I must confesse, something in this nature I haue formerly published, as namely of the Horse onely with whose nature and vse I haue beene exercised; and acquainted from my Child-hood: and I hope, without boast, need not yeeld to any in this Kingdome. Yet in this worke, I hope, your Lordship, and all other Princely maintainers of that worthy and seruiceable beast, shall finde I haue found out, and herein explained a nearer and more easie course for his preservation and healing, then hath hitherto beene found or practised by any, but my selfe onely. Whatsoeuer it is, in all humbleness. I offer it as a sacrifice of my loue and seruice to your Honour, and will euer whilst I haue breath to be,



be your Honours

in all dutifull seruice,

G. M.

TO THE COURTEOUS
READER.

Here is no Artist or man of Industry (Courteous and Gentle Reader) which mixeth Iudgment with his Experience, but findeth in the trauell of his labours, better and nearer courtes to make perfit the beauty of his worke, then were at first presented to the eye of his knowledge: for the mind being pre-occupied and busied with a vertuous search, is euer ready to catch hold of whatsoeuer can adorne or illustrate the excellency of the thing in which he is imployed: and hence it hapneth that my selfe hauing seriously bestowed many yeeres to finde out the truth of these knowledges, of which I haue intreated in this Booke; haue now found out the infallible way of curing all diseases in Cattell, which is by many degrees more certaine, more easie, lesse difficult, and without all manner of cost and extraordinary charges, then euer hath beene published by any homeborne, or forraine practiser. Wherein (friendly Reader) thou shalt finde that my whole drift is to helpe the needfull in his most want and extremitie. For hauing many times in my journeying seene poore and rich mens Cattell fall sodainly sicke, some traueilling by the way, some drawing in the Plough or draught, and some

To the Courteous Reader.

vpōn other imployments; I haue also beheld those Cattell or Horse dye ere they could be brought either to Smith, or other place where they might receiue cure; nay, if with much paines they haue been brought to the place of cure, yet haue I seene Smiths so vnprouided of Potheccary simples, that for want of matter of sixe-pence, a beast hath dyed worth many Angels. To preuent this, I haue found out these certaine and approued Cures; wherein if euery good Horse-louer, or Husband-man, will but acquaint his knowledge with a few hearbs and common weeds, he shall be sure in euery Field, Pasture, Meadow, or Land-furrow; nay, almost by euery high-way side or blinde ditch, to finde that which shall preserue and keepe his Horse from all sodaine extremities. If thou shalt finde benefit, thinke mine houres not ill wasted; if thou shalt not haue occasion to approue them, yet giue them thy gentle passage to others, and thinke me as I am,

Thy friend.

G. M.



The Table of the first Booke.

Of Beasts.

Of the Horse.

O F the Horse in generall.	pag.1	Ordering of the pack or cart-horse.	pag.9
Nature of Horse.	pag.2	The preservation of Horses.	p.9
Choise of Horses, and their shapes.	p.2	Of Riding in generall.	p.10
Colours of Horses.	pag.3	Imperfect use of this recreation.	p.10
Horse for a Princes seat.	p.3	The pleasure of Riding.	p.11
Horses for tranell.	p.3	The Authors Apology.	p.11
Hunting-horses.	p.4	The taming of a yong Colt.	pag.12
Running-horses.	p.4	His sadling & bridling.	p.12
Coach-horses.	p.4	His first backing.	p.13
Pack-horses.	p.5	Three maine points of a horse-mans skill.	p.15
Cart-horses.	p.5	Of helpes, & which they be.	pag.15
Of Mares.	p.5	Of Corrections, and which they be.	pag.16
Ordering horses for seruice.	5	Of Cherishings.	pag.16
Ordering horses for a Princes seat.	p.6	Of the Musrole, and Martingale.	pag.17
Ordering of tranelling-horses.	pag.7	Of treading the larger rings.	pag.18
Ordering of hunting-horses.	pag.8	Choise	
Ordering of running-horses.	p.8		
Ordering of coach-horses.	p.9		

The Table

Choyce of grounds.	pag. 18	Of the Carprille.	p. 37
Of gallopping large rings.	20	Of going aside	pag. 38
Helpes in the large ring- turnes.	pag. 20	Of riding before a prince	39
Corrections in the ring- turnes.	p. 21	Of the Caragolo.	p. 39
Cherishings in the ring- turnes.	p. 22	To ride for Recreation.	p. 40
Of stopping & going back	22	Of breeding of all sorts of horses fit for the Husband mans use.	p. 41
Helpes.	p. 23	Grounds to breed on.	p. 42
Corrections.	pag. 23	Diuision of Grounds.	p. 42
Cherishings.	pag. 24	Choyse of the Stallion.	p. 43
Of aduancing before.	p. 24	Choyse of Mares.	p. 43
Helpes.	pag. 25	When to put them together	pag. 43
Corrections.	pag. 25	Of couering Mares.	p. 44
Cherishings.	pag. 26	To know if a Mare hold.	p. 44
The use of aduancing.	p. 26	To conceiue male foales.	p. 44
Of jerking behind.	pag. 26	To prouoke lust.	p. 45
Helpes.	pag. 27	To keepe your Mares from barrennesse.	p. 45
Corrections.	pag. 37	Ordering Mares after Co- uering.	pag. 45
Cherishings.	pag. 37	A helpe for Mares in sea- ling.	pag. 45
Of turning.	pag. 27	Ordering Mares after sea- ling.	pag. 46
Helpes.	pag. 30	Weaning of Foales.	p. 46
Corrections.	p. 30	Ordering after weaning.	46
Cherishings.	pag. 30	Gelding of Colts.	pag. 46
Of the turning post.	p. 32	Of Horses for trauell & how to make them amble.	p. 47
Of managins.	pag. 33	The markes of a good tra- uelling Horse.	p. 47
Diuersities of manages.	p. 34		To
Of the Carriere.	pag. 34		
Horses for pleasure.	p. 35		
Of bounding aloft.	p. 35		
Of the coruet.	pag. 36		
Of the gallop galliard.	p. 36		

The Table.

To make a Horse amble. p.47	How to cure all inward sicknesses, &c. p.62
Diuers waies of ambling. 48	Of the Head-ach, Frenzie, or Staggers. pag.63
Of Trammelling. p.48	Of the sleeping euill pag.63
Of Wisping. pag.48	Of the falling-on li. Plinck-strucke, Night-mare or Palsey. p.64
Helpes in ambling. p.48	Of the generall Crampe, or convulsion of sinewes. p.64
The ordering and dyeting of the Hunting-Horse. p.49	Of any cold or cough, wet or dry, or for any consumption or putrification of the Lungs whatsoener. p.65
Taking up the Hunting-Horse. pag.50	Of the running glauders, or mourning of the Ch ne. pag.64
Cloathing the hunting-horse. pag.50	Of hide bound, or consumption of the flesh. p.66
Dressing the hunting horse. pag.51	Of the brest-paine, or any sicknesse of the heart. p.66
Of watering and feeding the hunting-horse. pag.52	Of tyred horses. p.66
The exercise of the horse. 53	Of diseases of the stomach, as surfeits, loathing of meate or drinke. p.67
The scouring of the horse p.54	Of Foundring in the body. pag.67
Ordering a horse after exercise. p.55	Of the hungry euill. p.68
Of ordering dyeting, taking up, cloathing, dressing, watering and feeding the running horse. p.55. & 56	Of diseases of the Liver, &c. p.68
Of his exercise by ayring and coursing. p.56. & 57	Of the yeallowes and diseases of the gall. p.68
Of sweats. pag.58	Of the sicknesse of the spleene.
Of scouring him. p.59	
Ordering after exercise. p.59	
Generall rules for a running-horse. pag.59	
Generall rules for a trauelling horse. p.60	

The Table.

spleene.	pag.69	swelling after bloud-let- ting, any gald. backe, can- ker, sit-fast, wens, navell- gall, &c.	p.75
Of the dropsie, or euill habit of the body.	pag.69	Of the Vines.	p.75
Of the Chollicke, belly-ake, or belli-bound.	p.70	Of the strangle, bile, botch, or impostume.	pag.76
Of the laxe or bloody flyx.	pag.70	Of the Canker in the nose, or any other part.	pag.76
Of the falling of the funda- ment.	pag.71	Of staunching bloud in any part.	pag.76
Of Bots, and wormes of all sorts.	p.71	Of the diseases in the mouth, as bloody-rifts, liggs, Lampas, canerie, inflama- tion, tongue-hurt, or the barbs.	pag.77
Of paine in the kidneyes, paine-pisse, and stone.	p.71	Of paine in the teeth, or loose teeth.	pag.77
Of the strangullion.	p.71	Of the cricke in the necke.	p.77
Of pissing bloud.	p.72	Of the falling of the crest, maunginesse in the maine, or shedding of hayre.	p.78
Of the Colt-euill, mattering of the yard, falling of the yard, shedding of seed.	p.72	Of paine in the withers.	p.78
Of the particuler diseases in Mares, as barrennesse, con- sumption, rage of lowe, casting foales, hardnes to foale, and to make a Mare cast her foale.	pag.72	Of swaying the backe, or weaknesse in the back.	p.78
Of drinking venome, &c.	pag.73	Of the itch in the tayle, scab, maunginesse, or farcy.	p.79
Of suppositaries, glisters, & purgations.	pag.73	Of any balting whatsoever, &c.	pag.79
Of neesings & frictions.	p.74	Of foundring in the feete.	pag.80
Of all the diseases in the eyes.	pag.75	Of the splent, curbe, bone- spanen	
Of the impostume in the eare, pole-euill, fistula,			

The Table.

spanen, or any knob, or bony excreSSION or ringbone.	ter.	pag. 84.
pag. 80	Of the cords, or string-halt.	p. 85
Of the Mallander, Sellander, Paines, Scratches, Millet, Mules, Crowne-scabbe, &c.	Of spur-galling, &c.	p. 85
p. 81	To heale any old sore or wound.	p. 85
Of an upper attaint, or neather, or any over-reaching.	Of sinewes cur.	p. 85
pag. 81	Of eating away dead flesh.	pag. 85
Of all the infirmities of, in, or about the hoves, &c.	Of knots in ioynts.	p. 86
p. 82	Of venemous wounds, &c.	pag. 86
Of the blond-spanen, haugh bony, or any other vnnatural swelling.	Of Lice or Nits.	p. 86
pag. 82	To defend a horse from flies.	pag. 86
Of Windegals.	Of bones broke, or out of ioynt.	pag. 86
Of enterfairing, shakelgall, &c.	Of drying or skinning sores when they be almost whole.	pag. 87
pag. 83	A most famous receit, to make a horse that is leane, and that is full of inward sicknesse, found and fat in foureteene dayes.	p. 87
Hurts on the Cronet, as quilter bone, or matlong.	To make a white starre.	p. 88
p. 84		
Of wounds in the foot, grueling, pricking, figge, re-trait, or cloying.		
p. 84		
To draw out stub or thorne.		
pag. 84		
Of any Aubury or Tet-		

Of the Bull, Cow, Calfe, or Oxe.

Of the Bull, Cow, Calfe, or Xxe, &c.	Of not mixing and mixing breeds.	pag. 88	pag. 89
The Countreyes for breed.	The shape of the Bull.	pag. 88	pag. 89
	The use of the Bull.		pag. 90
	The		

The Table.

The shape of the Cow. pag. 90	Of the worrne in the taile. pag. 98
The vse of the Cow. pag. 90	Of any cough or shortnesse of breath. pag. 98
Of Calues, and their nourishing. pag. 90	Of any Impostume, Bile, or Botch. pag. 98
Observations for Calues. p. 90	Of diseases in the sinewes, as weaknesse, stifnesse, or sorenesse. pag. 98
Of the Oxe, and his vse. 91	Of the generall scab, particular scab, itch, or scurfe. p. 99
Of the Oxes food for labour. pag. 92	Of the hide-bound, or dry-skinne. pag. 99
Oxen to feed for the Butcher. pag. 92	Of diseases in the Lungs, as Lung growne, &c. p. 99
To preserve Cattell in health. pag. 92	Of the biting with a mad dog, or other venomous beast. pag. 100
Of the Feuer in Cattell. p. 93	Of the falling downe of the pallat. pag. 100
Of any inward sicknesse p. 93	Of any paine in the hoofe, as the foule, &c. p. 101
Of the diseases in the head, as Sturdy, &c. p. 93	Of all kindes of bruising. pag. 101
Of all the diseases in the eyes of Cattell, &c. p. 94	Of swallowing bens-dung, or any poyson. p. 101
Of diseases in the mouth, as barbs, bleanes, &c. p. 95	Of killing Lice or Ticks. pag. 101
Of diseases in the necke, as being galled, bruised, swoln, closh, &c. pag. 95	Of the dew-bowle. pag. 102
Of the Pestilence, gargill, or murraine. pag. 96	Of the losse of the Cud. p. 102
Of misliking or leannes. p. 96	Of the killing of all sorts of Wormes. pag. 103
Of diseases in the guts, as fluxe, costinenesse, &c. p. 97	Of vomiting blood. p. 103
Of pissing blood. p. 97	
Of dropping nostrils, or any cold. pag. 97	
Of all manner of swellings. pag. 97	

The Table.

<p>Of the Gout. pag. 103</p> <p>Of Milting. pag. 103</p> <p>Of prouoking a beast to pisse. pag. 104</p> <p>Of the ouer-flowing of the gall. pag. 104</p> <p>Of a beast that is goaded. pag. 104</p> <p>Of a Cow that is withered. pag. 104</p> <p>Of drawing out of thornes or</p>	<p>stubs. pag. 104</p> <p>Of purging of Cattell. p. 105</p> <p>Of being shrew-runne. p. 105</p> <p>Of faintnesse. pag. 105</p> <p>Of breeding milke in a Cow. pag. 105</p> <p>Of bones out of ioynt or broken. pag. 106</p> <p>Of the rot in Beasts. p. 106</p> <p>Of the Pantas. p. 106</p> <p>Of al manner of wounds. 106</p>
--	---

Of the Sheepe.

<p>OF Sheepe, their vse, choise, shape, and preservation. pag. 107</p> <p>Of the staple of wooll. p. 108</p> <p>Of the choise of Sheepe. p. 108</p> <p>Of the leare of Sheepe. p. 108</p> <p>The shape of Sheepe. p. 109</p> <p>When Ewes should bring forth. pag. 109</p> <p>Ordering of Lambes. p. 110</p> <p>Needfull obseruation. p. 110</p> <p>The preservation of sheepe. pag. 111</p> <p>The signes to know a sound Sheepe, & an vsound. pag. 112</p> <p>Of sicknesse in Sheepe, as the</p>	<p>Feauer, &c. pag. 112</p> <p>Of the generall scab. p. 112</p> <p>Of killing Maggots. p. 113</p> <p>Of the Red water. pag. 113</p> <p>Of Lung-sicke, or any cough or cold. pag. 113</p> <p>Of the Worme in the claw, or in any other part. pag. 114</p> <p>Of wilde-fire. pag. 114</p> <p>Of the diseases of the gall, as Choller, Iaudise, &c. pag. 114</p> <p>Of the tough fleame, or stoppings. pag. 114</p> <p>Of bones broke or out of ioynt. pag. 115</p>
---	--

of

The Table.

Of any sicknesse in Lambs.	Ewes Lambe.	p.117
pag.115	Of licking up poyson.	p.117
Of the sturdy, turning euill,	Of Lambs yeaned sick.	p.117
or More-found.	Of making an Ewe to be easi-	
p.115	ly deliuered.	p.118
Of all diseases in the eyes in	Of teeth loose.	p.118
generall.	Of increasing milke.	p.118
p.115	Of the staggers or lease sick-	
Of water in a Sheepes belly.	nesse.	p.118
pag.116	Of all sorts of wormes.	p.119
Of the tagd or belt sheepe.	Of the losse of the cud.	p.119
pag.116	Of saving sheepe from the	
Of the Poxe in Sheepe.	rot.	p.119
p.116	A few precepts for the	
Of the wood-euill or crampe	Shepherd.	pag.120
pag.116		
Of making an Ewe loue her		
owne Lambe, or any other		

Of Goates.

OF Goates, and their Na-	Of Goates that cannot kid.
tures.	
pag.121	pag.124
The shape of Goates.	Of the Tetter, or dry scabbe.
pag.122	pag.124
The ordering of Goats.	Of Gelding Kids.
p.122	p.124
Of any inward sicknesse, as	Of the isch in Goates.
the pestilence, &c.	p.125
p.123	Of the snell stopping.
Of the dropsie.	p.125
pag.123	Of the Staggers.
Of stopping the teates.	p.125
p.124	

Of Swine.

OF all manner of Swine.	Of the choise and shape of
pag.126	Swine.
The nature of Swine.	pag.127
p.126	Of the vse and profit of
	swine

The Table.

swine. pag. 128	Of the lugging of swine with dogs. pag. 133
Of the Fever, or any hidden sicknesses in swine. pag. 129	Of the poxe in swine. p. 133
Of the Murraine, pestilence, or Catharre. pag. 130	Of killing Maggots in any part. pag. 133
Of the gall in Swine. p. 130	Of feeding Swine either for Baken or Lard. pag. 133
Of the Meazels. pag. 130	Of feeding Swine in Wood-Countries. pag. 133
Of Impostumes in any part. pag. 130	Of feeding swine in Cham-pain Countries. pag. 134
Of vomiting. pag. 131	Of feeding at the reeke. 134
Of leannesse, milke, scruse, or maungnesse. pag. 131	Of feeding swine, in, or about great Citties. pag. 135
Of the sleeping euill. pag. 131	Of feeding hogs for Lard, or Boares for Brawne. 135
Of paine in the Milt. p. 132	
Vnnaturalnesse in Swine. 132	
Of the Laxe or Fluxe. p. 132	

Of Conies.

Of tame Conies in gene-rall. pag. 138	rich Conies. pag. 139 & 140
The nature of the Conie. 138	Of the feeding and preserva-tion of Conies. pag. 140
Of Boxes for tame Conies. pag. 139	Of the rot amongst Conies. pag. 141
Of the choise and profit of	Of madnesse in Conies. 141



The Table of the second Booke.

Of Poultry.

O F the Dunghill-Cocke,	Capons.	pag. 148
Henne, Chicken, and	Of the pip in Poultry.	p. 149
Capon.	Of the roupe.	pag. 149
pag. 144	Of the fluxe.	pag. 150
Of the dunghill-Cocke.	Of stopping in the belly.	p. 150
p. 144	Of lice in Poultry.	p. 150
Of the choise and shape of the	Of stinging with venemous	
Cocke.	wormes.	pag. 150
pag. 145	Of all sore eyes.	pag. 150
Of the Henne, her choise and	Of Hens which crow.	p. 151
shape.	Of Hens which eat their	
pag. 145	Egges.	pag. 151
Of setting Hennes.	Of keeping a Hen from sit-	
pag. 145	ting.	pag. 151
Of the choise of Egges.	Of making Hens lay soon	
p. 145	and oft.	pag. 151
Of Chickens.	Of making hens leane.	p. 151
pag. 146	Of the Crow trodon.	p. 152
Of feeding and cramming	Of the Hen-house, and situ-	
Chickens.	ation.	pag. 15
pag. 146		
Of preserving Egges.		
p. 148		
Of gathering Egges.		
p. 148		
Of the Capon, and when to		
carue him.		
pag. 148		
Of the Capon to lead Chic-		
kens.		
pag. 148		
Of feeding and cramming		

Of Geese.

O F the Goose in generall.	Of the choise of Geese.	153
pag. 153	Of laying eggs & sitting.	153.
	Of	

The Table.

Of the ordering of Goslings.	pag. 154	Of the fattening of elder Geese.	pag. 155
Of Greene Geese, and their fattening.	pag. 154	Of gathering of Geese-keepers.	pag. 155
Of Ganders.	pag. 154	Of the gargell in Geese.	p. 155

Of Turkies.

OF Turkies in generall.	pag. 156	Of the Turkey-Hen, and her sitting.	pag. 156
Of the choise of the Turkey-Cock.	pag. 156	Of the feeding of Turkeyes.	pag. 157

Of Water-Fowle, and others.

OF the tame Duck.	p. 157	Of nourishing and fattening Hearnies, Puccs, Gulls, and Bitters.	pag. 161
Of wilde Duckes, and their ordering.	pag. 158	Of feeding Partridge, Pheasant, and Quail.	p. 162
Of Swans, and their feeding.	pag. 158	Of Godwits, Kraits, Gray-Plouers, or Curlewes.	p. 162
Of Peacocks and Peahennes.	pag. 159	Of Blackbirds, Thrushes, Pel-fares, &c.	pag. 163
Of the tame Pigeon or rough-footed.	pag. 160		

Of Hawkes.

OF Hawkes in generall, of all kinds.	pag. 164	Of sore eyes in hawkes.	p. 166
Of Scourings.	pag. 165	Of the Pantas.	pag. 167
Of impostumes in Hawkes.	pag. 166	Of casting the gorge.	p. 167
		Of all sorts of wormes or Filanders.	pag. 167

The Table.

Of all swellings in Hawkes feet. pag. 167	Of the Apoplexie, or falling euill. pag. 173
Of the breaking of a pounce. pag. 168	Of the purging of Hawkes. pag. 173
Of bones broke or out of ioynt. pag. 168	Of a Hawke that cannot mute. p. 174
Of all inward bruifings. pag. 168	The assuredst signes to know when a Hawke is sicke. pag. 174
Of killing Lice. p. 168	Of the feuer in Hawkes. pag. 175
Of the Ric. pag. 169	Of helping a Hawke that cannot digest. p. 175
Of the Frounce. p. 169	Of the Gout in hawkes. p. 176
Of the Rheume. p. 170	Of the staunching of blond. pag. 176
Of the formicas. pag. 170	
Of the Fistula. pag. 171	
Of the prinie euill. pag. 171	
Of all sorts of wounds. p. 172	

Of Bees.

OF Bees in generall. 177	Of the casting of Bees, & ordering the swarmes. p. 179
Of the nature of Bees. pag. 177	Of selling Hines. pag. 181
Of the Bee-hine. p. 178	Of the preservation of weak stockes. pag. 181
Of the trimming of the hine. pag. 178	An excellent secret concerning Bees. pag. 182
Of the placing of hines. p. 179	

Of Fishing.

A Plat-forme for Fish-ponds. pag. 183	Of the taking of all sorts of Fish, with Nets or otherwise. pag. 186
Of fishing in generall. p. 184	

FINIS.



A SHORT TABLE

expounding all the hard words

in this Booke.

∩

A *Vripigmentum*, or *Orpiment*, is a yellow hard substance to be bought at the Potheecaries.

Aristolochia longa, otherwise called red *Madder* is an herbe growing almost in euery field.

Aristolochia-rotunda, is the hearbe called *Galingale*.

Agrimonic, or *Egrimonie*, is an vsuall and knowne hearbe.

Ameos or *Comin-royall*, is an hearbe of some called *Bulwort* *Bishops-weed*, or *Herb-william*.

Fnyse, is that herbe which beares *Anyse-seeds*.

Auet, or some called *Dill*, is an hearbe like *Fenell*, onely the seeds are broad like *Orenge seeds*.

Agnus-castus, of some called *Tutesaine*, is an hearbe with reddish leaues, and sinewie like *Plantaine*.

Egyptiacum, is a reddish *unguent* to be bought at the Potheecaries, and is soueraigne for *Fistulaes*.

Assafatida, a stinking strong gumme to be bought at the Potheecaries.

Adraces, or *Adarces*, is that *Salt* which is ingendred on the salt Marshes by the violence of the Sunnes heate after the tyde is gone away.

Asterion, is an herbe growing amongst stones as one walles,

A Table for hard words.

walles, or such like, it appeareth best by night, it hath yellow flowers like *Foxegloues*, and the leaues are round and blewish.

Aloes, is a bitter gumme to be bought at Pothe-
caries.

B.

B*Etin*, or *Beets*, is an hearbe with long broad leaues indented, and growes in hedge-rows.

Bolarmoniacke, is a red hard earthy substance, to be bought at the Potheccaries, and is of a cold and binding nature.

Broomewort is an hearb with browne coloured leaues, and beareth a blew flower, and most commonly growes in woods.

C.

C*resses* are of two kinds, *water-Cresses*, and *land-Cresses*. they haue broad smooth leaues, and the first growes in moist places, the latter in Gardens, or by high wayes.

Comin, see *Ameos*.

Carthamus is an hearbe in taste like *Saffron*, and is called *bastard-Saffron*, or *mocke-Saffron*.

Galamunt is an ordinary hearbe, and groweth by ditches sides by high-wayes, and sometimes in Gardens.

Coleander is an hearbe which beareth a round little seed.

Chiues are a small round hearbe growing in Gardens, like little young *Onions* or *Scallions* not about a weeke old.

D.

D*iapente*, a soueraigne powder made of five equall simples, as *Bay-berries*, *Iuory*, *Aristolochia-rotunda*,
Myrrhe,

A Table for hard words.

Myrrhe, and *Gentiana*, may be bought of the Pothecrie.

Dettony is an hearbe called *Pepper-wort*, or *horse-Radish*, and groweth in many open fields.

Dragons is an hearbe common in euery Garden.

E

E *Lecampna* is an hearbe of some called *Horse-helme*, and growes almost in euery field, and euery Garden.

Eyebright is an hearbe growing euery meadow.

F

F *Ennegreeke* is an hearbe which hath a long slender trayling stalke, hollow within, and sowne in Gardens but easiest to be had at the Pothecries.

Ferne Osmund is an hearbe, of some called *Water-ferne*, hath a tryangular stalke, and is like *Pol-pody*; and it growes in bogs, and hollow grounds.

G

G *Alingale*, see *Aristolochia-rotunda*.

H

H *Horse-mint* is an hearbe that growes by waters sides, and is called *Water-mint*, or *Brooke-mint*.

Horse helme, see *Elcampana*.

House-lecke, is a weed which growes on the tops of houses that are thatcht, and are like vnto a small *Hartichocke*.

Hearbe-Robert, hath leaues like *Hearbe Benet*, and small flowers of a purple colour, and growes in most common fields and Gardens.

I

I *Vory*, is the shauings of the *Elephants* tooth, or the old *Harts*, or *Stags* hornes, being the smooth white thereof.

A Table for hard words.

K

K *Not-grasse*, is a long running weed, with little round smooth leaues, and the stalke very knotty and rough, winding and wreathing one seame into another very confusedly, and groweth for the most part in very moyst places.

L

L *Ettice* is a common sallet-herbe in euery Garden.

L *Lolium*, is that weed which we call *Cockell*, and groweth amongst the corne in euery field.

Liuerwort, is a common hearbe in euery Garden.

M

M *Ayth*, is a weed that growes amongst corne, and is called of some *Hogs-Fennell*.

Myrrhe, is a gumme to be bought at the Pothe-caries.

Mandragg, is an hearbe which growes in Gardens, and beareth certaine yellow Apples, from whence the Pothe-caries draw a soueraigne oyle for broken bones.

N

N *Ecpe*, see *Calamint*.

O

O *Riganum*, is an hearbe called wilde-*Marioram*, and growes both in open fields, or in low coples.

Orifice, is the mouth, hole; or open passage of any wound or vicer.

Opoponax, a drug usuall to be bought at the Pothe-caries.

P

P *Itch of Burgundy*, is *Rossen*, and the blacker the better.

Plantaine, is a flat leafe and finewic, growing close
to

A Table for hard words.

to the ground, and is called *Whay-bred* leafe.

Paliott-royall is an hearbe that groweth both in fields and gardens, and is best when it flowreth.

Patch-grease is that tallow which is gotten from the boyling of Shoemakers threads.

Q²*uinquesfolio*, of some called *Cinquefoyle*, is that hearbe which is called *Five-leaved* grasse.

R^R*ed Oaker* is a hard red stone which we call *Raddle*, *Orell*, *Marking-stone*.

S^S*ellondine*, or *Tetterwort* is a weede growing in the bottome of hedges, which being broke, a yelow iuyce will drop and runne out of it.

Shirwit is an hearbe with many small leaues, and growes most in Gardens.

Stubwort is an hearbe which growes in woody places, and is called *Wood-Sorrell*.

Sanguis Draconis is a hard red gumme to be bought at the Potheccaries.

Stonecrop is a greene weede growing on the tops of walles.

Sparma-Cata is the seed of the *Whale*, excellent for inward bruises, and to be bought at the Potheccaries.

Salarmoniacke is a drug to be bought at the Potheccaries.

T^T*ussilaginis* is that weed which we call *Colts-foot*.
Treapharmicon a composition made of three simples, and to be bought at the Potheccaries.

Turmericke is a yelow simple, of strong saour, to be bought at the Potheccaries.

Verdi.

A Table for hard words.

V^V*Verdi-grease* is a greene fatty gumme drawne from
Copper, and is to be bought at the Pothecharies.

V^W*Wood-Rose*, or *Wilde-Eglantine*, is that small
thinne flower which growes vpon *Bryars* in
woods or hedges.

Y^T*Arrow* is an hearbe called the *Water-Violet*, and
growes in Lakes or marish grounds.

FINIS.



The deuision of the Titles entreated
of in these Bookes following.

- First, of the *Horse*, his Nature, Diseases, and Cures :with the whole Art of Riding, and ordering all sorts of *Horses*, from fol. 1. to 88.
- 2 Of the *Bull*, *Cow*, *Calf*, or *Oxe*, their breeding, feeding, and curing, from fol. 88. to 107.
- 3 Of *Sheepe*, their choise, vse, shape, infirmities and preservation, from fol. 107. to 120.
- 4 Of *Goates*, their nature, shape, ordering, and curing, from fol. 121. to 126.
- 5 Of *Swine*, their choise, breeding, curing, and feeding, in eyther Champaine or Wood Countries, from fol. 126. to 138.
- 6 Of tame *Conies*, from fol. 138. to 144.
- 7 Of *Poultry*, their ordering, fattening, cramming, and curing all the diseases to them incident, from fol. 144. to 163.
- 8 Of *Hawkes*, eyther short-winged, or long-winged, the generall cures for their diseases and infirmities from fol. 164. to 176.

Of

A Table for hard words.

- 9 Of Bees, their ordering, profit and preservation, from fol. 177. to 182.
10 Of Fishing, and making Fish-ponds, from fol. 183. to the end.

Published by Authority.



THE GENERALL CVRE

and Ordering of all HORSES: As also the whole Art of Riding great Horses, with the breeding, breaking, and ordering of them: Together with the manner how to vse the Running, Hunting, and ambling Horse, before, in, and after their Trauaile.

CHAPTER I.

Of the Horse in generall, his choise for euery seuerall vse, his Ordering, Dyet, and best preservation for health, both in Trauaile and in rest.



THE full Scope and purpose of this Worke, is in few, plaine, and most vndoubted true words, to shew the Cure of all manner of diseases belonging to all manner of necessary Cattell, nourished and preserved for the vse of man; making by way of demonstration so easie and playne a passage, to the vnderstanding and accomplishment of the same, that not the simplest, which hath priuiledge to be esteemed no Idiot; nor the poorest, if hee can make two shillings, but shall both vnderstand how to profit himselfe by the Booke,

C

and

and at the dearest rate purchase all the receipts and simples declared in the whole Volume. For in sober truth, this Booke is fit for euery Gentleman, Husbandman, & good mans pocket, being a memory which a man carrying about him wil when it is cald to account, giue a man full satisfaction, whether it be in the Field, in the towne, or any other place, where a man is most vnprovided.

Nature of
Horses.

And now forasmuch as the Horse of all Creatures is the noblest, strongest, and aptest to do a man the best & worthiest seruices, both in Peace and Warre, I thinke it not amisse first to begin with him. Therefore for his nature in generall: He is valiant, strong, nimble, and aboue al other beasts most apt & able to endure the extremest labours: the moist quality of his composition being such, that neither extreame heat doth dry vp his strength, nor the violence of cold freeze the warme temper of his moving spirits, but that where there is any temperate gouernement, there he withstandeth all effects of sicknesse, with an vncontrolled constancy. He is most gentle and louing to the man, apt to be taught, and not forgetfull when any impression is fixed in his braine. He is watchful aboue all other beasts, and wil indure his labour with the most emptiest stomacke. Hee is naturally giuen to much cleanlinesse, is of an excellent scent, and offended with nothing so much as euill saours.

The choise of
Horses, and
their shapes.

Now for the choise of the best Horse, it is diuers, according to the vse for which you will imploy him. If therefore you would haue a Horse for the Warres, you shal chuse him that is of a good tal stature, with a comly leane head, an out-swelling fore-head, a large sparkling eye, the white whereof is couered with his eye-browes, and not at all discerned, or if at all, yet the least is best, a small thinne eare, short and pricking; if it be long, well carried,

carried, and euer moving, it is tollerable; but if dull or hanging, most hatefull: a deepe necke, large crest, broad breast, bending ribs, broad and straight chine, round and full buttocke, with his huckle-bones hid, a taile high and broad, set on neyther too thicke nor too thin; for too much haire shewes sloath, and too little, too much choller and heat: a full swelling thigh, a broad, flat, and leane leg, short pasternd, strong ioynted, and hollow bones, of which the long is best, if they be not wierd, and the broad round the worst.

The best colours are Browne bay, Dapple-gray, Roand, Bright bay, Blacke with a white neare-foot be- Colours of
Horses. hind, white farre-foot before, white rache or white star, Chesse-rut or Sorrell, with any of those markes, or Dun with a blacke list: And of these Horses, for the warres, the courser of *Naples* is accounted the best, the *Almaine*, the *Sardinian*, or the *French*.

If you will chuse a Horse for a Princes Seat, any su- Horse for a
Princes Seate. preme Magistrate, or for any great Lady of state, or wo- man of eminence, you shal chuse him that is of the finest shape, the best reyne, who naturally beares his head in the best place, without the helpe of the mans hand, that is of nimblest and easiest pace, gentle to get vpon, bold without taking affrights, and most familiar and quiet in the company of other horses: his colour would euer bee milke white, with red fraynes, or without, or elle faire dapple-gray, with white maine and white tayle: And of these the *English* is best, then the *Hungarian*, the *Swethland*, the *Poland*, the *Irish*.

If you will chuse a horse only for trauel, euer the bet- Horses for
Trauaile. ter shape, the better hope, especially looke that his head be leane, eyes swelling outward, his necke wel risen, his chine well risen, his ioyns very strong, but aboue all, his

pasternes short and straight, without bending in his going, and exceeding hollow and tough Hoves: let him be of temperate nature, neyther too furious, nor too dull, willing to goe without forcing, and not desirous to Run when there is no occasion.

Hunting horses

If you wil chuse a Horse for Hunting, let his shape in general be strong, and wel knit together, making equall proportions; for as vnequall shapes shew weaknesse, so equal members assure strength and indurance. Your vnequal shapes are, a great head to a little necke, a big body to a thinne buttocke, a large limbe to a little foot, or any of these contraries, or where any member suits not with the whole proportion of the body, or with any limbe next adioyning. Above all, let your hunting horse haue a large leane Head, wide Nostrils, open chauld, a bigge Wyssand, and the Winde pipe straight, loole, wel coured, and not bent in the pride of his Reining: The English horse bastardized with any of the formes Races first spoake of, is of all the best.

Running horses.

If you chuse a Horse for Running, let him haue all the finest shape that may be, but aboue all things let him be nimble, quicke and fiery, apt to flye with the least motion: long shapes are sufferable, for though they shewe weaknesse, yet they assure suddain speed. And the best Horse for this vse, is the *Arabian*, *Barbary*, or his bastard. *Jennets* are good, but the *Turkes* are better.

Coach-Horses.

If you wil chuse a horse for the Coach, which is called the swift draught, let his shape be tall, broad and wel furnished, not grosse with much flesh, but with the bignesse of his bones; especially looke he haue a strong necke, a broad breast, a large chine, sound cleane limbes, & tough hoves: and for this purpose your large English Geldings are best, your Flemish Mares next, and your strong ston'd

ston'd horses tollerable, *Flemish or Frisons.*

If you wil chuse a Horse for portage, that is, for the *Packe-horses.* Packe or Hampers, chuse him that is exceeding strong of body and Limbes, but not tall, with a broad backe, out-ribs, ful shoulders, and thicke withers; for if he be thin in that part, you shal hardly keepe his backe from galling: be sure that he take a long stride with his feete, for their pace being neither trot nor amble, but onely a foot pace, he which takes the largest strides, goes at the most ease, and ridds his ground fastest.

Lastly, if you wil chuse a horse for the Cart or plough, *Cart-horses.* wh ch is the slow draught, chuse him that is of most ordinary height, for horses in the cart vnequally sorted, neuer draw at ease, but the tal hang vp the low horse. Let them be of good strong portion, big breasted, large bodied, and strong limb'd, by nature rather inclin'd to craue the whip, then to draw more then is needfull. And for this purpose Mares are most profitable; for besides the effecting of your worke, they yearely bring you forth increase: therefore if you furnish your draught with Mares to breed, obserue in any wise to haue them faire-*Of Mares.* fore-handed, that is, good head, necke, breast and shoulders; for the rest it is not so regardfull, onely let her body be large, for the bigger roome a Foale hath in the dammes belly, the fairer are his members. And aboue all things, obserue neuer to put your draught beasts to the saddle, for that alters their pace, and hurts them in their Labour.

Now for the ordering of these seueral horses: first for *Ordering of* the horse for service, during the time of his teaching, *Horses for Ser-* which is out of the wars, you shal keep him high & lusti-*uice.* ly, his food, no straw but good hay, his prouender cleane dry oates, or two parts oates, and one part Beanes or Pease,

Pease, well dried and hard, the quantity of halfe a pecke at a watering, morning, noone, and euening is sufficient. In his daies of rest you shall dresse him betwixt fve and fixe in the morning, water betwixt seauen and eight, and feede from nine till after eleauen : in the afternoone you shall dresse betwixt three and foure, water betwixt foure and fve, and giue prouender till fixe, then litter at eight, and giue food for all night. The night before he is ridden, you shal at nine of the clocke at night take away his hay from him ; at foure of the clock in the morning giue him a handful or two of oates, which being eaten, turne him vpon his snaffle, rub all his body and legges ouer with drye cloathes, then saddle him, and make him fit for his exercise. Soone as he is cald for to be ridden, wash his Bit in faire water, and put it into his mouth with all other things necessary, draw vp his girths, and see that no buckles hurt him : then leade him forth, and as soone as he hath beene ridden, all sweating as he is, lead him into the stable, and first rubbe him quickly ouer with drye wispes, then take off his saddle, and hauing rubd him all ouer with dry cloathes, put on his housing cloth, then set on the saddle againe, and girt it, then lead him forth, and walke him vp and downe in gentle manner, an houre or more, till he be cold ; then set him vp, and after two or three houres fasting, turne him to his meat: then in the afternoone, curry, rub, and dresse him, then water him, and order him as is aforesayd.

Ordering of
Horses for
Princes seates.

For ordering of the horse for a Prince, or great Ladies seate, let it be in his time of rest, like vnto the horse for seruice: and in his time of labour like the trauailing horse, as shall bee shewed instantly : onely because he is to bee more chossely kept, I meane in the beaurifullest manner, his coate lying smooth and shining, and his whole body without

without any stayne or ill-fauourdnesse, you shall euer when he hath bin ridden, and commeth in much sweating, presently haue him into the stable, and first rub him downe with cleane wisps, then taking off his saddle, with a sword-blade whose edge is rebated, you shall stroake his necke and body cleane ouer, leauing no sweat nor filth that can be gotten out; then cloath him vp, and set on the Saddle, and walke him forth as aforesayd: after, order and dyet him as you doe other trauailing horses: dry oates is his best prouender, if he be fat and full; and Oates and Beanes, if he be poore, or subiect to lose his flesh quickly.

Ordering of
trauailing horses.

For your trauailing horse, you shall feede him with the finest Hay in the Winter, and the sweetest grasse in Summer: His prouender would be drye Oates, Beanes, Pease or Bread, according to his stomacke: in the time of rest, halfe a pecke at a watering is sufficient, in the time of his labour, as much as hee will eate with a good stomacke. When you trauaile him, water two houres before you ride, then rub, dresse, and lastly feed, then bridle vp, and let him stand an houre before you take his backe. Trauaile moderately in the morning, til his winde be rack'd, and his limbes warmed, then after doe as your affaires require. Be sure at night to water your horse two miles before you come to your iournies end; then the warmer you bring him to his Inne, the better: walke not, nor wash not at all, the one doth beget colds, the other foundring in the teete or body: but set him vp warme, wel stopp, and soundly rubd with cleane litter. Giue no meat whilest the outward parts of your horse are hot or wet with sweate, as the eare-roots, the flankes, the necke, or vnder his chaps: but being drye, rubbe and feed him according to the goodnesse of his stomacke.

stomacke. Change of food begetteth a stomack, so doth the washing of the tongue or nostrils with vinegar, wine and salt, or warme vrine. Stop not your horses fore-feet with Cowes dung, til he be sufficiently cold, and that the blood and humours which were disperfed, be settled into their proper places. Looke wel to his backe, that the saddle hurt not, to the girths that they gal not, and to his shooes, that they be large, fast, and easie.

Ordering of
hunting-horses.

For the ordering of your Hunting-horse, let him in the time of his rest haue al the quietnesse that may be, much Litter, much Meate, and much dressing: water euer by him, and leaue him to sleep as long as he pleaseth. Keep him to dung rather soft then hard, and looke that it be wel coloured and bright, for darknesse shewes grease, and rednesse inward heating. Let exercises and mashes of sweet Mault after, be his vsual scourings, & let bread of cleane Beanes, or Beanes and Wheat equally mixt, be his best food, and Beanes and Oates the most ordinary.

Ordering of
running-horse.

For the ordering of your Running horse, let him haue no more meat then to suffice nature, drinke once in foure and twenty houres, & dressing euery day once at noone onely. Let him haue much moderate exercise, as morning and euening aytings, or the fetching of his Water, and know no violence but in his courses onely. Let him stand darke and warme, haue many cloathes, and much Litter, being wheat straw only. If he be very fat, scoure oft: if of reasonable state, scoure seldome: if leane, then scoure but with a sweet mash onely. Be sure your horse be empty before hee course, and let his foode be the finest, lightest, and quickest of digestion that may be: the sweats are more wholesome that are giuen abroad, and the cooling most natural which is giuen before he come into the stable. Keepe his limbes with coole oyntments,
and

and by no meanes let any hote spices come in his body : if he grow dry inwardly, wash't meate is wholesome If he grow loose, then giue him straw in more abundance. Burning of sweet perfume in the stable is wholesome; and any thing you either do about your horse, or giue vnto your horse, the more neate, cleanly, and sweete that it is, the better it nourisheth.

For ordering the Coach horse, let him haue good dressing twice a day, Hay and Prouender his belly full, and Litter enough to tumble on, and hee cannot chuse but prosper. Let him be wa k't and washt after trauaile, for by reason of their many occasions to stand still, they must be inur'd to all hardnesse, though it be much vn-wholesome. Their best food is sweet Hay, and wel dried Beanes and Oates, or Beane-bread : Looke well to the strength of their shooes, and the galling of their harnessse: Keepe their legges cleane, especially about the hinder fetlockes, and when they are in the house, let them stand warmly cloathed.

Ordering of
Coach-horses.

For the ordering of the Pack-horse, or the Cart-horse, they neede no washing, walking, or houres of fasting; only dresse them wel, looke to their shooes and backes, and then fil their bellies, and they will doe their labour. Their best food is sweet Hay, Chaffe and Pease, or oate-huls and pease, or chopt straw and Pease mixt together: once a weeke to giue them warme Graines and Salt is not amisse, for their Labour wil preuent the breeding of wormes, or such like mischiefes.

Ordering of
the Packe and
Cart-horse.

Now for the general preservation of horses health, it is good whilst a horse is in youth & strength, to let him blood twice in the yeare, that is, beginning of the Spring and beginning of the Fal, when you may best afford him a weekes rest. After you haue let him blood, two daies af-

For the preser-
uation of all
Horses.

ter

ter giue him a comfortable drench, as two spoonfuls of *Diapente*, or such like, (which is called horse *Methridate*) in a quart of strong Ale. Vse oft to perfume his head with Frankinsence, and in the heat of Summer vse oft to swimme him. Let a fat horse drinke oft, and a little at once, and a leane horse whensoever hee hath appetite. Much rubbing is comfortable, and cheereth euery member. Be sure to let your horse eate grasse once in a yeare, for that cooleth the blood, scoures away grosse humors, and giues great strength and nourishment to the body. If notwithstanding all these principles, your horse fall into sicknesse and disease, then looke into the Chapters following, and you shall finde the truest, best approued, and the most familiar medicines for all manner of infirmities, that euer were knowne or published, except my Maister-peece.

CHAP. 2.

Of riding in generall, and of all the particular knowledges belonging to the Art of Riding of a great Horse, or Horse for seruice or pleasure.

HAuing spoken something already of horses, it now followes wee say something of the commendable exercise of riding of great horses, which in the very action it selfe speaketh Gentleman to al that are performers or doers of the same. And although our English Gentry from a sloath in their industry, ayme for the most part at no more skill then the riding of a ridden and perfect horse, which is but onely the setting foorth of another mans vertue, and thereby making themselves richer in discourse then action: yet our English Husbandman, or good man, whom I seeke to make exact and perfect in all

Imperfect vse
of this recrea-
tion.

all things, shall not onely recreate himselfe by riding the horses whom other men haue made perfect, but shall by his owne practise bring his Horse from vtter ignorance to the best skill that can be desired in his motions, wherein hee shall finde a twofold pleasure, the one, an excellent contentment to his minde, that hee can performe so worthy an action, without the chargeable assistance of others: and the other a healthfull support to his body, when by such recreation his spirits and inward faculties are reuiued and inflamed.

The pleasure
of Riding.

But now me thinkes I heare some say, that I haue vterly taken away the tune of this string, I haue stricken so oft vpon it, and that indeede there can be no delight where there is no variation: and that surely I cannot vary any more vpon this playne-song, but the World will find discord eyther in this, or my former descants. But let them not deceiue themselues, for my building standeth on a firme rocke, and I know both shall be worthily iustificable: onely this I must informe all men, that in times past, long since, when our first rules of Horsemanship were giuen vnto vs, our Masters were not so skillfull in the abilities of horses performances as we are, but measured them by the proportions of their owne weaker natures, and thence became so too much tender ouer them, that they neyther respected the greatnesse of their owne labours, nor the length of time, before they assumed to their desires, so in the end they might aspire to their wishes with safety and full satisfaction: whence it came to passe that in those times, & even now in these, (chiefly amongst those which are meere riders, and no Keepers) there is no lesse time allowed to the making vp of a perfect horse, then two yeares, when we know, and my selfe from experience can iustifie the same, that if the

The Authors
Apology.

Rider

Rider can keepe as wel as Ride, that is, giue as wel directions for the preservation of a horses health, and the auoidance of *Sorrances* and sicknesse, as put in practise artfully euery violence to be vsed in his Lessons, he may very wel make vp a perfect horse in three moneths, fit either for pleasure or battaile, which is the ful scope and end of this Treatise: wherein I would not haue any man expect either new Rules, or a contradiction of any already set downe by men of practise and knowledge in the Art, but onely a straightning or drawing of them together into a much narrower compasse, giuing satisfaction to our desires, and finishing vp our worke with speede, which before was almost lost or neglected, with the length of our Labours, as you shal fully perceiue by this discourse which followeth.

The taming of
a young Colt.

First then to speak of the taming of a yong colt, which is as it were the preface or introduction to the Art of Riding: you shal after he hath beene in the house a weeke, or a fortnight, and is familiar with the man, and wil withall patiently indure currying, Combing, Rubbing, clawing, and handling in euery part and member of his body, without any shew of Rebellion or knauishnesse, which you shal compasse by all gentle and easie meanes, doing nothing about him suddainly or rashly, but with leisure and moderation: then you shal offer him a Saddle, which you shal set in the manger before him, that he may smel to it, and looke vpon it, and you shal gingle the girths and stirrops about his eares, to make him carelesse of the noise, then withal gentlenesse, after you haue rub'd his sides therewithal, you shal set it on his backe, and gird it gently on, and then place his Crooper with all ease; which done, you shal take a sweete watering trench, wash, and annoynted with honey and salt, and

His saddling and
bridling.

and put it into his mouth, placing it to hang directly about his tush, and as it were a little leaning thereupon: this you shal doe in the morning as soone as you haue drest him, and then thus saddled and bridled you shal leade him forth, and water him in your hand abroad: then bringing him in, and after hee hath stood a little reined vpon his trench an house or more, take away the bridle and saddle, and let him goe to his meate til the eueuing: then leade him forth (as before) with the saddle to the water, then when he is set vp, gently take off his saddle and cherish him, and then dresse him, and cloath him vp for all night.

The next day saddle and bridle him as before sayd, and put on him a strong Musrole of writen Iron, or a sharpe Cauezan, and a Martingal, which you shal buckle at such length that he may no more but feele it when he ierketh vp his head, and then lead him forth into some new plowed field, or soft ground, and there after you haue made him trot a good space about you in your hand, and thereby taken away from him all his wantonnesse, and knauish distractions, you shal offer your foot to the stirrop, at which if he shew any distaste, eyther in body or countenance, you shal then course him about againe: then offer againe, and with leisure rise balfe way vp, and goe downe againe: at which if he shrinke, correct him as before, but if he take it patiently, then cherish him, and so mount into the Saddle, which done, after cherishing, light downe againe, and giue him bread, or grasse to eate: then looke that your girths be wel girted, and strait, that the crooper be strong and of iust length, that the bridle hang euen, and in his due place without in ward or out ward offence, that your stirrops be fit, and generally al things without offence, either to
your

The first backe-
ing

your selfe or to the beast, and then as before, mount his backe, seate your selfe iust and euen in the saddle, make the reynes of your bridle of equall length, carry your rod without offence to his eye, in your right hand, the point either directly vp right, or twarted towards your left shoulder: Then hauing cherisht him, let the Groome which before led him, hauing his hand on the chaffe halter, leade him forward a dozen or twenty paces, then gently straining your hand, with the helpe of the footman, make him stand still, then cherish him, and leade him forward againe, & doe this fise or fixe times one after another, till by continuall vse you make him of your owne accord (without the footmans helpe) by giuing your body, & thrusting your legges forward, goe forward, which as soone as he doth, you shall stay him, and cherish him, and then sitting on his backe, let your footman leade him home, and bring him to the blocke, where after you haue cherisht him, you shall gently alight, & caule him to be led vp, & well drest & meated. The next day you shal bring him forth as before, and in all points take his backe as afore said, and so by the helpe of the footman trot him fore right halfe a mile at least; then let the footman lay off his hand, & walke by him, till you haue of your selfe trotted him foorth another halfe mile, then cherish him, and make the footman giue him some grasse or bread to eate, and then taking a large compasse, trot him home, and bring him to the block as before, and there alight, and so se: him vp.

The third day let your footman light vpon some spare iade, and then bringing your colt to the blocke, take his back gently, & after you haue cherisht him, the other riding before you, follow him forth right a mile, euer and anone at the end of twenty or thirty score, stopping the

the colt gently, cherishing him, & making him yeeld and goe backe a step or two, and then putting him forward againe, till he be so perfect, that with the least motion he will go forward, stop, and retire, which will be effected in two dayes more: in which space if he chance at any time to strike or rebell, you shall make him which rides before you take the spare reyne, and leade him forward, whilest you giue him two or three good lashes vnder the belly, and then being in his way, take the spare reine to your selfe againe: and thus you shall doe till all faults bee smended: then you shall spare your horseman or guide, and onely by your selfe for three or foure daies more, trot him euery morning and afternoone, at least a mile or two forward, vsing him only to stoppe and retire, and bringing him home a contrary way to that you went forth, till he be so perfect and willing, that he will take his way how or in what manner your selfe pleaseth, euer obseruing to mount and dismount at the blocke onely, except some speciall occasion constryne you to the contrary. This you may very well bring to passe the first weeke of the Horses riding.

As soone as you see your horse wil receiue you to his backe, trot forth-right, stop and retire, and doe all this with great patience and obedience, you shal then call into your minde the three maine points of a Horsemens knowledge, which are helpes, corrections, and cherishings: and for helpes, they consist in these: First the voyce, which sounding sharply and cheerefully, as crying *Via, how, hey*, and such like, adde a spirit and liueliness to the horse, and lend a great helpe to al his motions: then the bridie, which restrayned or at liberty, helpes him how to doe, and shewes which way to doe:

Then

The three main
poynts of a
Horsemens skil

Of helpes and
which they be.

then the Rod which being onely shewed, is a helpe to direct, being onely mooued, helps the quicknesse and nimblenesse of the motion; and beeing gently toucht withal, helps the loftinesse of a horses salts and leaps, and makes him as it were gather all his strength into one point: and lastly, the calues of the Legges, *Stirrop-leathers*, and *stirrops*, which mooued by the horses side, helps him to nimblenesse, swiftnesse, and readinesse in turning. Some to these helps adde the helpe of the Spur, chiefly in high salts or boundings, but it must be done in a iust and true time, and with such gentle bitternesse, that the horse may vnderstand it for a helpe, or else he wil take distaste, and finding it saueur like correction, in stead of bettering his doings, doe with more disorder, as to spraule with his fore-feete in aduancing, to yerke out with one or both his hinder feete in the coruet or bounding, shaking of his head, and such like, as wil appeare in practise.

Of Corrections
and which they
be.

Now of Corrections the most principal is the Spur, which must not at any time be giuen triflingly, or itchingly, but soundly and sharply, as oft as iust occasion shal require: then the Rod, which vpon disorder, sloth, or miscarriage of the members, must bee giuen also soundly: then the voice, which being deliued sharply and roughly, as *ha villaine*, *carrikro*, *diablo*, and such like threatnings, terrified the horse, and maketh him afraide to disobey: and lastly the bridle, which now and then stricken with a hard chocke in his mouth, reformeth many vices and distemperatures of his head; yet this last must be done seldome, and with great discretion, for to make a custome thereof, is the ready way to spoile a horses mouth.

Of cherishings.

Now of cherishings, there are generally in vse but three,

three, as first the voice, which being deliuered smoothly; and louingly, as crying *holla, so bay, there bay there*, & such like, giues the horse both a cheerefulnesse of spirit, and a knowledge that he hath done well: then the hand, by clapping him gently on the necke or buttocke, or giuing him grasse or other foode to eate after hee hath pleased you: and lastly, the bigge end of the Rod, by rubbing him therewith vpon the withers or maine, which is very pleasing and delightful to the horse.

Now after these ordinary and actual helpes, corrections, and cherishings, you shall haue respect to the Musrole, or Cauezan, and Martingale, which carry in them all the three former both seuerall and vnite: for it is first an especial helpe and guide to euery wel-disposed horse, for setting of his head in a true place, forming of his Reine, and making him appeare comely and gallant in the eyes of the beholders; then it is a sharpe correction when a horse yerketh out his nose, or disordereth his head any way, or striaeth to plunge or runne away with his Rider: And lastly, it is a great cherishing vnto the Beast, when he yeeldeth his head to your hand, by shrinking from his face, and so leauing any more to torment him, but when he offendeth: whence it comes that more from this then any thing else, the Horse first gaineth the knowledge of his Masters will, and is desirous to performe it: therefore you shal bee very carefull to the placing of this vpon the Horse, as first, that it hang somewhat low, and rest vpon the tender Grissell of the Horses nose, whereby the correction may be the sharper when occasion requires it; then that it be loose and not strait, whereby the horse may feeble vpon the yeelding in of his head, how the offence goeth from him, and so know that onely his owne disorder is

D

his.

Of the Musrole
and Martingale.

his owne punishment. Lastly, he shal be careful to note how hee winneth the Horses head, and by those degrees to draw his Martingale straiter and straiter, so as the Horse may euer haue a gentle feeling of the same, and no more, til his head and Reine be brought to that perfection which you desire, and then there to stay, and keep the Martingale constantly in that place only, which you shal performe in those few dayes which you trot your Horse forth-right, being before you bring him to any Lesson, more then the knowledge of your selfe, and how to receiue you to his backe, and trot forth obediently with you.

Of treading
the large Ring

Choyce of
ground.

When your horse is brought vnto some certainty of Reine, wil trot forth-right with you at your pleasure, and by your former exercise therein is brought to breath & delight in his trauaile, which wil grow & increase vpon him, as you grow and increase in your labour, then you shal bring him to the treading forth of the large Rings in this manner: First, if he be of heauy and sluggish nature, sloathful and dull, and albeit hee haue strength and sufficiency of body, yet you finde him slouely and vnapt, then you shal trot him into some new plowed field, soft and deepe: But if he be of quicke and of fiery spirit, apt, nimble, and ready to learne, then you shal trot him into some sandy or grauelly place, where is strong and firme foot-hold, and there you shall marke out a spacious large Ring, at least threescore or fourescore paces in compasse, and hauing walkt him fixe or seauen times about the same on your Right hand, you shal then by a little straitning of your right Reine, and laying the calfe of your left Legge to his side, make a halfe-circle within your Ring vpon your Right hand, downe to the center or mid point thereof, and then by straitning your
left

left Reine a little, and laying the calfe of your Right leg to his side, make another halfe circle to your left hand, from the center to the outmost Verge, with two halfe circles contrary turned, will make a perfect Roman S. within the Ring; then keeping your first large circumference, walke your horse about on your left hand, as oft as you did on your Right, and then change within your Ring as you did before to your Right hand again, & then trot him first on the Right hand, then on the left, so long as tyou shall thinke conuenient. And although our ancian Masters in this *Art* haue prescribed vnto vs certaine numbers of Ring-turnes, and how oft it is meete to goe about on either hand, as if all Horses were of one euen ability, yet I would wish you to neglect those Rules, and onely to practise your horse in this Lesson, according to his strength of body, sometimes applying him therein an houre, sometimes two, & sometimes three, more or lesse according to your discretion: for the space of time can neither bring wearinesse nor tiring: and for your change of hands, you shall do it as oft as shall seeme best to your selfe, being euer very carefull to giue him the most exercise on that hand, on which he is euermost vnwillingest to goe: and in this lesson be carefull also that hee doe it chcerefully, lustily, and nimbly, quickning and inflaming his spirits by all the meanes possible: and when you find that he wil trot his large rings perfectly, which wil questionlesse be in lesse then a weeks space, being wel applied therein, for you must not fore-slow any morning except the Sabbath, nay hardly any after noone: also if you find him sloathful and heavy, for there is no greater thinderance then the Riders too much tendernes, nor no greater furtherance then a continual moderate exercise: before as I said, when he wil trot his Rings well, then

Of galloping
large rings.

in the same manner, and with the same changes, you shall make him gallop the same Rings, which he shall doe also with great dexterity, lightnesse, and much nimblenesse, without losing the least part or grace of his best Reine, nay so carefull you shall bee thereof, that in his galloping you shall, as it were, gather his body together, and make his Reine rather better then it was, and make him take vp his feet so truly and loftily, that not any eye may see or perceiue a falshood in his stroke, but that his inward feet play before his outward, and each of a side follow the other so directly, that his gallop may appeare as the best grace of all other motions: neither shall you enter him into this lesson rashly & hastily, but soberly & with discretion, making him first gallop a quarter of the ring, then halfe, then three parts, and lastly the whole Ring: neither shall you force him into his gallop with violence, or the sharpnes of spurs, but with spirit and mettall, making him by the lightnes and cheerefulnes of your owne body, passe of his owne accord into his gallop, and especially in his changes, where you may let him feele your Leg, and shew him your Rod on the contrary side: and herein is to be noted, that continually those changes (in as much as they are made in a much straiter compasse) must be done euer with great quicknesse, and more stirring nimblenesse then the intire Lesson.

Helpes in the
large ring-
turnes.

Now for the helps necessary in these large ring-turnes, they consist generally in the *Voice*, *Rod*, *Calues* of your Legs, and the *Bridle*: in the *voice* by quickning him vp, and reuiuing his spirits when he growes sloathful, with these words, *How*, *hey*, or *via*: In the *Rod*, by shewing it him on the contrary side, or laying it on the contrary shoulder, and sometimes by shaking it ouer his Head, (which is a kinde of threatning) chiefly when you make
your

your changes. In the *calues of your legs*, when you clap them hard to the contrary side to which he turneth, or by springing and ierking your legs forward, hard vpon your stirrop-leathers, which wil quicken him, and make him gather vp his limbes better then the spur by many degrees: and lastly in the *Bridle*, by drawing it in a little straiter, and holding it with some more constancie, when you put any of your former helps in vse, or doe any thing with more life or courage, for that maketh him draw his limbes together, and to straiten his rings with gracefull comelinesse.

For the corrections in these large rings they be diuers; as namely, the *bridle*, the *spurre*, and the *rod*, and sometimes the *voyce*, yet that but seldome: for the *bridle*, you shall correct your horse therewith if hee carry his head or chaps awry, making as it were mowes & ill-fauoured countenances, giuing him now and then a little check in the mouth, and awakning him from such forgetful passions, or now and then drawing the trench to and fro in his mouth, which wil reforme the errour; then the *spurre*, which must be laid sharpe and hard to his sides, when you finde your helps will do no good, but that his sloath rather more and more increaseth, or when hee presseth and hangeth hard vpon your hand, or looseth the tutch of his reyne, or such like vices: for the *rodde*, when you finde that hee neglecteth the shewing or shaking of it, or when he disordreth any of his hinder parts, and will not gather them vp comely together, then you shall therewith giue him a sound lash or two vnder the belly, or ouer the contrary shoulder, and to any of these former corrections you shall euer accompany the threatening of your voyce, when the fault is too much foule, and no otherwise, because there should be euer an entire loue

Corrections in
the ring-turnes

betwixt the horse and the horse-man, which continuall chiding will either take away, or at least root out the apprehension thereof.

*Cherishing in
the Ring-
burne.*

Now for your cherishings, they are those which I formerly spake of; onely they must be vsed at no time but when your horse doth well, and hath pleased your mind both with his cunning & tractableness: and although the time for the same be when he hath finished his lessons, yet there is a secret pleasing & cherishing of a horse with the bridle, which must be exercised in the doing of his lessons, and that is the sweetning of his mouth by a little easing of your bridle hand, and gently drawing it vp backe againe, letting it come and goe with such an vnperceiuing motion that none but the beast may know it.

*Of stopping
and going
backe.*

When your horse can trot & gallop these large rings with all perfectnesse, which with good industry will be perfected in lesse then a fortnights exercise, you shall then proceede to make him stop faire, comely, and without danger, which you shall doe in this manner: First, as soone as you haue taken his backe, cherish him, put him gently forward, and bring him into a swift trot; after you haue trotted him forty or threescore yards forward, you shall by drawing in your bridle-hand strairly and suddenly, make him gather his hinder legs and forelegs together, and so in an instant stand still, which as soone as he doth, immediatly you shall ease your hand a little, yet not so much as may giue him liberty to presse forward, but rather to yeeld backward, which if you finde he doth, you shall giue him more liberty, and cherish him, and then hauing paused a while, draw in your bridle-hand, and make him goe backe two or three paces, at which if he sticke, instantly ease your hand, and draw it vp againe, letting it come and goe till hee yeeld
and

and goe backward, which (for the most part) all horses at the first will doe: but if it be that your horse rebell and will not goe backe with this gentle admonition, you shall then cause a foote man standing by to put him backe with his hand, and in his motion you shall cherish him, that he may vnderstand what your will is: and thus euery time you make him stop, you shall make him retire backe, till in one space of time you haue made both lessons perfect: and this practise you shall vse both till you come to your large rings, and at euery time that you finish your lesson, or giue the horse breath or ease; whereby you shall perceiue that your horse shall learne to trot and gallop the large rings, to stop and retire back all in one space of time, because you see successiuelly they follow one another, and are to be done (though three) but as one intire lesson.

Now for the helpes in these lessons, the best for stopping is the choice of ground, as by making your horse euer to stop down the sloape of some hill, or descending ground, whereby he may be compeld to couch his hinder loines the better, and so make him stop most comely, and to obserue that the ground be firme and hard, without danger of sliding, least the horse finding such an imperfection, grow fearefull, and so refuse to do your will out of his owne danger. In retyring you shall helpe him with your rod, by putting it before his breast, or shaking it before his knees, to make him remoue his feete more quicke and nimbly.

Helpes:

For corrections in stopping, it must sometimes bee done by our selfe, as with the euen stroke of your spurres when in his stop he disordereth his head, or with any one single spurie, when he casteth out his hinder loynes, and will not stop right in an euen line; and sometimes it

Corrections.

must be done by another by-stander, when hee refuseth to stop at all, who standing at the place of stop, as soone as you draw vp your hand, shal with his Rod threaten the horse, and make him not dare to presse forward, or if he do presse forward, to make him Retire swiftly backe so much ground as he gayned, both your selfe and the by-stander, rating him with your voices extremely: for corrections in retiring, they are the euen strokes of both your spurs, when he stickes or presses vpon your hand, and wil not yeeld backe; & also your Rod struck sharply vpon his knees and breasts, and the Rod of a by-stander stricke vpon his breast, knees, and face, when his stubbornnesse is too violent.

Cherishings.

But for his Cherishings, they be al formerly spoke of, when your will is comely and Obediently performed, besides the addition of some other, as a present easing of your Bridle-hand, and the clapping and cherishing of the by-stander, and so suffering him to stand and recouer breath a good space after.

*Of Aduancing
before.*

When your horse can stop and retire wel, which may be done in the same space, that you teach him his large Ring-turnes, for it is as it were three lessons learnt in one, you shal then teach him to Aduance before when hee stoppeth, which is very comely and graceful to the Beholders; and you shall doe it in this manner: After you haue stopped your horse, without giuing your hand any ease, you shal lay the calues of both your legges hard to his sides, and adde thereto the noise of the shaking of your Rod, and your voice, by crying *vp, vp*, which wil at first (peraduenture) but a little amaze him, because hee vnderstandeth not your meaning: Therefore you shall put him forward againe, and doe as before, and that with a little more strength, continuing the practise of
the

the same till you perceiue he taketh one foote from the earth, then cherish him a little, and so to the lesson again, till he take vp both his legges from the ground, which when he doth orderly or disorderly, yet cherish him exceedingly, that he may come to the knowledge of your meaning, without which all your labour is lost; then to your former practise againe, till you haue brought him to that perfectnesse, that hee wil with all readinesse aduance as oft as you will giue him the calues of your legs to his sides, be it lesse or more times together: this done, you shal looke to the orderly and comelinesse of his aduancing: as first, that he tak v^p his legs both euen together, and winde them inward towards his body; then that he aduance not too high (for feare of comming ouer vpon you) but couch his hinder loynes close to the ground; then that hee sprau^{le}th not, nor paweth with his feet forward: and lastly, that he aduance not for his owne pleasure, but when you commaund him by your owne direct and orderly motions, for the contrary is a foule fault in Horsemanship.

For helpes in this lesson, they are the calues of your legs, the shaking of your rod ouer his head, & your voice, Helpes. as is before said, & the descent of some hanging ground, which wil make his hinder loines couch the better.

The Corrections are according to the natures of offences, as the euen stroake of your Spurs, or a good lash with your Rod, when you see hee fixeth his feet to the ground, and stubbornely applies himselfe to disobey you, or will take vp his feete one after another, and not both together. If hee doe aduance too high, so as he is ready to come ouer vpon you, or if he sprau^{le} or pawe forth with his feete, you shal then not onely giue him both your Spurs hard together, but also a good ierke Corrections.
or

or two with your Rod betweene his eares: but if he aduance when you would not haue him, you shal then in the same instant ierke him ouer both the knees with your Rod; and if hee aduance againe, ierke him againe, not ceasing til he fixe his feete to the ground, or goe backward, and then cherish him.

Cherishings.

For partieular cherishings in this Lesson, they are no other then those formerly spoke of, onely they must bee done with a more ready watchfulnesse, in the very instant and moment of time, in which he performeth any thing wel, that the Horse may vnderstand why, and wherefore he receiueth such contentment, and thereby be encouraged to continue in his goodnesse, and be more ready to apprehend his Riders pleasure.

The vse of Aduancing.

For the vse of Aduancing, it is two-fold: as namely, to giue a grace to his other lessons, and to bring his body to nimblenesse: yet for the most part it is onely vsed at the stop, where when you haue finisht any lesson, if then concluding with the stop, you make him aduance, once, twice, or thrice, it wil be both a grace to the Beast, and shew much Art in the horse man; also it maketh a horse apt and ready to turne wel, and maketh him trust to his hinder Legges, whereby his fore-parts may be directed and gouerned at the Horse-mans pleasure.

Of yerking behind.

Next to Aduancing, you shal teach your Horse to yerke behinde, in this manner: When at any time you haue made him stop, you shal presently with your Rod giue him a good ierke vnder the belly neere to his flank, which inough at the first hee appiehend not, yet by a continual and constant vse thereof, you shal in the end bring him to yerke out his hinder legs; at the first doing whereof you shal cherish him, for that is the onely language by which he knowes he doth your will, and then

hauing

hauing paused a little, make him do it againe, in reasing it euery day, and doubling his doings til he be so ready, that when you please to giue the ierke, hee wil then giue the yerke, and then you shal looke to the comelinesse of his doing, that is to say, that hee yerke not out his hinder Legs, til his fore-legs be aboute the ground, then that hee yerke not one Legge farther out then the other, but both euen together, then that hee yerke not too high, and lastly, that he yerke not one legge out whilest the other is on the ground, all which are errors of great grosnesse. Therefore to make the horse more perfect in this lesson, it shal be good to teach him to yerke out behind, when he standeth in the stable, by ierking him vpon the buttockes with your Rod, and not ceasing to molest him till he raise his Rumpe aboute the ground, and then to cherish him, and so to apply him without any ease and rest, till he do your wil; then when he is perfect, to put the same in praetise when you are in the fiede on his backe, by turning your Rod in your hand to his buttocke-ward, and touching him therewith, to make him yerke as afore said.

For the Helpes, they are the constant staying his mouth on the bridle, the stroake of your Rod vnder his belly, or the gentle touching him vpon the Rumpe with the same. Helpes.

The Corrections are onely the euen stroake of your Spurs, when either he refuseth to yerke, or yerketh out disorderly, and out of malice; or the single Spur on that side on which he yerketh out most disorderly: and lastly, a restless holding of him to the Lesson, not giuing him any rest or ease, till hee do it in that manner which you can wish. Corrections.

Then for his Cherishings, they are all the same formerly Cherishings mentioned,

mentioned, being bestowed vpon him in the very instant of his well doing.

(Turning.

When your horse is perfect in all the lessons formerly I spoke of, and vnderstandeth the helpes and corrections belonging to the same, you shal then teach him to turne readily on both hands, by straitning his large Rings, and bringing them into a much lesse compasse: and although amongst Horse-men, and in the Art of Horsemanship, there are diuers and sundry turnes, some high and lofty, as the turne vpon the *coruet*, *Capriole*, or on bounds, some close and neere the ground, as the turne *Terra*, *Terra*, or those we call *Caragolo*, *Serpeigiare*, and such like, and some swift and flying, as the *Incavellare*, *Chambetta*, and such like: yet sith they all labour but to one end, which is to bring an horse to an exact swiftnesse and readinesse in turning, I will in as brieve and plaine manner as I can, shew you how to compasse the same. First, therefore you shal make out a Ring some three or foure yards in compasse, and in the same withal gentlenesse a while walke your horse, suffering him to goe in the same at his owne pleasure, gathering his head vp by little and little, and making him take pleasure in the same, til you finde that he taketh knowledge of the Ring, and wil with all willingnesse walke about the same, coueting rather to straiten it, then inlarge it, which perceiued, you shal then carry your bridle-hand constant & somewhat strait, yet the outmost Reine euer somewhat more strait then the inmost, making the horse rather looke from the Ring then into the Ring, and the calue of your leg (as occasion shall serue) somewhat neere to the outward side of the horse, & then you shal trot him about the Ring, first on the one side, and then on the other, making your changes within that strait Ring, as you did before within the large Ring.

And

And in this sort without ceasing, you shal exercise your Horse a full houre together, then stop him, make him aduance twice or thrice together, then retire in an euen Line, and so stand stil a pritty while, and cherish him, then when hee hath taken fresh breath, to him a-gayne, and do as before, continually labouring by raising vp your bridle-hand, and thrusting forward your Legs and body, to bring his trot to all the swiftnesse and loftines that may be, and in your changes to do them so readily and roundly as may be also, making him to lap his outmost leg so much ouer his inmost leg, that he may couer it more then a foot ouer, and thus you shal exercise him a whole forenoon, at least a week together, only doing his former lessos but once ouer in a morning, and no more, and in this practice you teach him perfectly three lessos together, that is, the turne *Terra, Terra*, the *Incaualare*, and the *Chambetta*, the turne *Terra, Terra*, in the outmost circle of the strait Ring, and the *Incaualare* and *Chambetta* in the changes, wherein he is forc't to lap one Leg ouer another, or else to lift vp the inmost Leg from the ground whilest he brings the outmost ouer it: and surely in this Ring, and these changes, consisteth all the maine Art of turning, and the chiefest glory both of the horse and the horse-man: and therefore it is meet for euery Rider to thinke this lesson neuer perfectly learnt, and therefore continually to practise his horse in the same, making him not onely tread and trot these narrow rings, but also gallop them, and from gallopping them, to passe them about in ground salts, as by taking vp his fore-legs from the ground both together, and bringing his hinder fecte into their place, and so passing the Ring about once, twice, or thrice, at your pleasure, or as oft as the horses strength and courage wil allow: and this is the
true

Helpes.

true turne called *Terra, Terra*, and of greatest request with horse-men, and likewise with souldiers ; and this will euery horse naturally and easily be brought vnto, onely by a continuall trotting and galloping of these narrow rings. Thus you see the perfectnesse of your large rings brings your horse to an easie vse of the strait rings, and the easie knowledge of the strait rings brings a horse to the perfection of turning, which is the ground and maine summe of this Art, as stopping begets retiring, and retiring aduancing. Thus euery lesson as it were a chaine is liackt one to another.

Corrections.

The helps belonging to turning, are all whatsoever are formerly spoken of, because it is a lesson which besides that it containeth in it selfe all other lessons, so it must be done with more courage, Art, and nimblenesse, then any else whatsoever, and therefore the horse had need of all the assistance that can possibly be giuen him.

The corrections are the spurs giuen on the outmost side, when the horse stickes, and is harder to come about on the one side, then on the other; and the rod stricken hard on the outmost side of the offending member, as also a continuall labour when the horse shewes either vnwillingnesse or disobedience: touching the vn-nimblenesse of his turning when he beates one legge against another, or treads one foot vpon another, the raps and hurts he doth himselfe are sufficient corrections, and will both make him know his fault and amend it.

Cherishings.

For his cherishings, they are also the former already spoke of, yet to be vied (if possible) with greater earnestnesse, in as much as this lesson being most cunning, would for the performance thereof euer receiue the most comfort.

Your horse being brought to this perfection, that he will

will perfectly tread his large rings, stop, retire, aduance before, yerke behind, and turne readily on either hand, you shall then take away his musrole and trench, and in stead thereof put vpon his head a gentle Cauezan of two ioynts and three peeces, with a chap-band vnderneath, which you shall buckle close, but not strait, and be sure that the cauezan lie vpon the tender grissell of the horses nose, somewhat neere to the vpper part of his nostrils, then to the chap-band you shall fasten the Martingale, and lastly to the rings on each side the cauezan, you shall fasten long diuided reines, more then a yard and a halfe in length a peece, then into his mouth you shall put a sweet smooth cannon bit, with a plaine watering chaine, the cheeke being of large size, so as it may arme a little aboue the point of his shoulder; and the kirble shall be thicke, round & large, hanging loosely vpon his nether lip, and intifing the horse with his lip to play with the same. Thus armed you shall take his backe and casting the left reine of your cauezan ouer the horses right shoulder, you shall beare it vnder your thumbe, with the reines of the bit in your left hand; and the right reines of the cauezan you shall cast ouer the horses left shoulder, and beare it with your rod in your right hand, and so trot him forth the first morning out-right a mile or two in the high way, making him onely feele and grow acquainted with the bit, and onely making him now & then stop and retire, and gathering vp his heap into a due place, and fashioning his reyne with all the beautie and comelinesse that may be, which done, the next day you shall bring him to his large rings, and as was before shewed, there make him perfect with the bit, as you did with the snaffle, first in trotting, then in gallopping of the same, then make him stop, retire, aduance, yerke behind, and

and turne vpon either hand, with a great deale more perfectnesse, and more grace then was formerly done with the trench, which is an easie labour, in as much as the bit is of much better commaund, and brings more comeliness to the horses motions, is also a greater helpe, a sharper correction, and a cherisher of more comfort then any before vsed. And thus in the first moneth you may make any horse perfect vpon the trene in the lessons before spoke of, so in the second moneth you may make the same Lessons a great deale more perfect vpon the bit, and so presume in two moneths to haue a perfect ground horse, fit eyther for Souldier or Schollar, that hath any good Rules of Horseman-ship in him.

Of the turning
Post.

Now forasmuch as the Art of turning in horses is of great difficulty, and ought of all Lessons to be most elaborate, I wil speake a little further thereof, and shew you the practise of these present times, for the best accomplishment of the same, without stirring vp euil motions in the Horse, whence Restiuenesse and other vilde errors do grow; for it is certaine that euery Horse naturally desireth neither offence, nor to offend; but the rash discretion of ignorant Horse-men, which wil compell a Horse to do, before he know what, or how to do, is the begetting of those euils which are hardly or neuer Reclaimed: for a horse is like an ill brought vp boy, who hauing learnt drunkenesse in his youth, wil hardly bee sober in his age, and hauing once got a knauish quality, though hee bee neuer so much punished for the same, will yet now and then shewe that the Remembrance is not vtterly extinguished: and forasmuch as in this Lesson of strait turns, there is so much curious hardnesse, that a Horse is most subiect to Rebel, and learne many euils thereby, therefore to preuent all those euils, you shall

ſhall cauſe a ſmooth ſtrong poſt to be wel Ramm'd and fixed in the earth in the miſt of the ſtrait Ring, at the very point and center thereof; then cauſing a foot-man to ſtand at the poſt, you ſhal giue him the right Reine of your cauezan, which you ſhal make him hold about the poſt, and ſo walke or trot your horſe about the ſame; on your right hand as long as you pleaſe; then taking vp the right Reine, giue him the left Reine, and do as much vpon the left hand, and thus change from hand to hand, as oft as you ſhal think conuenient, till you haue brought your horſe to the abſolute perfection of euery turne, the poſt being ſuch a guide and bond vnto the horſe, that albeit the Horſeman were of himſelfe vterly ignorant, yet it is impoſſible the horſe ſhould eyther diſorder or diſobey his Riders purpoſe.

When your Horſe can thus perfectly ſet euery ſeueral turne, eyther ſtrait or open with his bit, you ſhall then teach him to manage, which is the only poſture for the vſe of the ſword on horſe-backe; and you ſhall do it in this manner: Firſt, cauſe ſome by-ſtander to pricke vp in the earth two riding Rods, about twenty or forty yards, or more, as you thinke good, diſtant one from the other; then walke your horſe in a ſtrait turne or Ring about, the firſt on your Right hand, and ſo paſſing him in an euen furrow downe to the other Rod, walke about it alſo in a narrow Ring on your left hand, then thruſt him into a gentle gallop downe the euen furrow, til you come to the firſt Rod, and there making him as it were, ſtop and aduance without any pause or intermiſſion of time, thruſt him forward againe, and beate the turne *Terra, Terra*, about it on your Right hand, then gallop forth right to the other Rod, and in the ſame manner beate the turne about on your left hand: and thus doe as

Of managing:

oft as you shall thinke it conuenient for your owne practice, and the horses strength.

Diuersities of
manages.

Now of these manages our ancient masters in horsemanship haue made diuers kindes, as manage with Rest, and manage without Rest; manage with single turnes, & manage with double turnes, which indeed doth rather breed confusion, then vnderstanding in either the horse or horseman: therefore for your better knowledge I will reduce them only but to two kinds: that is manage open and manage close: your open manage is that which I shewed you before, when you turne *Terra, Terra*, which is the most open of all strait turnes: and your close manage is when you turne vpon the *incavalare*, or *chambetta*, which are the closest of all turnes, and may bee done as before I shewed, in a flying manner, euen vpon one foot, which although it be artfull, yet it is not so glorious and safe for the Souldiers practice, onely this you may be most assured of, that when a horse can manage vpon both these turnes, he may manage without more instruction, vpon any other turne whatsoeuer.

Of the carere.

When your Horse is perfect in the manages before-sayd, you may then passe a *carere* at your pleasure, which is to run your horse forth-right at his full speed, and then making him stop quick y. suddainly, firme, and close on his buttocke: in which lesson there needeth little instruction, but onely some few obseruations, as first, that you make not your *carere* too long, whereby the horse may be weakened, nor too short, whereby his true winde and courage may be vndiscovered, but competent and indifferent, as about foure or five score yards at the most: then that you start him gently without affright: and lastly, that you first giue him a little warning with your bridle hand, and then stop him firmly and strongly; which place of
stop,

stop, if it be a little bending downward, it is a great deale the better. And thus in these lessons already shewed you, consisteth all the full perfection of a horse for service in the wars, which any painefull man may bring his horse wel vnto in lesse then three moneths, how euer our ancients in former times haue bene blinded, and in the same practice, haue wasted two yeares ere they brought it to perfection.

Now forasmuch as to the Art of Riding belongeth diuers other salts and leapes, right pleasant and curious to behold, and though not generally vsed in the Wars, yet not vtterly vselesse for the same, and sith they are many times very needfull for the health of mans body, I will by no meanes abridge our English husbandman of the same, but proceed to the Lessons which are meet for horses of pleasure, of which the first is to make a horse bound aloft with all his foure feet from the ground; and you shall doe it in this manner: when you haue trotted your horse forth right a dozen or twenty yards, you shall stop him, and when he hath aduanced once or twice, you shall a little straiten your bridle-hand, and then giue him the euen stroke of both your spurs together hard, which at first wil but onely quicken and amaze him, but doing it againe and againe, it wil breed other thoughts in him, and he being of spirit and mettall (as it is lost labour to offer to teach a iade such motions) he will presently gather vp his body, and eyther rise little or much from the ground, then presently cherish him, and after some Rest, offer him the like againe, and thus doe till you haue made him bound twice or thrice: then make much of him, and doe no more for that day: the next day renew his Lesson againe, and double his exercise, increasing so day by day, till he come to that perfectnesse, that

Horses for pleasure,

Of bounding aloft.

that hee wil bound whensoever your Spurs shal commaund him.

Of the Coruet. When your horse can bound perfectly, then you shall teach him the coruet, in this manner: you shal at the corner where two walles ioine together, a little hollow the ground a Horses length or more, and then place a smooth strong post by the side of the hollownesse a horses length likewise from the wall; then ouer against the post fasten an iron Ring in the wal: this done, Ride your horse into the hollow place, and fasten one of the reines of the cauezan vnto the Ring, and the other about the post, then after you haue cherish your horse, make him aduance, by the helpe of the calues of your legges onely twice or thrice together; then let him stand still, and cherish him; then make him to aduance againe at least a dozen times together; then rest, and after aduance twenty or forty times together, daily increasing his aduancings as he grows perfect therein, til you perceiue that he hath got such a habit therein, that he wil by no means presse forward, but keeping his ground certaine, aduance both before and behinde of an equall height, and keepe one iust and certaine time with the motion of your legs, neither doing slower nor faster, but all after one manner and leisure: but if you finde that hee doth not raise his hinder-parts high enough, then you shall cause a foote-man to stand by you, and as you make him aduance before, so the foote-man by ierking him gently vppon the hinder fillers with his Rod, to raise vp his hinder parts: also this will bring your horse in few dayes to a perfect and braue coruet, so that after you may doe it in any place where you please, without the helpe either of your wall or post, or other by-stander.

*Of the gallop
Galiard.*

When your Horse is made perfect in the coruet, and that

that hee will doe it readily and comely, you shall at the end of euery third or fourth aduancing, giue him the stroake of your spurs, and make him bound aloft; then put him to his coruet againe as before, and then make him bound againe; and thus at the end of euery third aduancing see you make him bound for the length of a tilt bar, or an ordinary managing furrow, according to the horses strength: and this is called the *gallop galliard*, which if it be taught a horse along by the side of some wall or smooth pale, it is so much the better, and a great deale fewer disorders wil arise and trouble the Rider.

The next Lesson you shall teach your horse after the gallop galliard, is the *capriolle* or Goates leape, which is the same manner of motion which the coruet is, only it is to be done forward, and much ground gained in the salt, and the horse is to raise his hinder parts as high or rather higher then his fore-parts, and to keepe rather a swifter then slower time in doing of it; therefore when you teach your horse to doe it, you shall bring him into some hollow furrow, where the ground is a little descending, and turning his head to the descent, put him into the coruet temperate and gently; then when you giue him the calues of your legs to raise vp his fore-parts, in the same instant ierke your leg violently forward againe, that hee may not sticke, but carry his hinder legges after his fore-legges, and let some skilfull foot-man standing by your side ierke the horse ouer the fillets with his Rod, & make him raise vp his hinder-parts: and thus do without ceasing, till hee performe your wil nimbly and cunningly, and then forget not to cherish him and giue him al comfort possible. And this lesson and the other which consist of violent and quicke salts or leapes, would euer be practised the first in the morning whilest a horse is fresh and lusty,

lusty, for to put him to them after his fire edge is taken away, will but bring him to a loathing of his instruction, or at the best to doe them but slouely, heauily, and unwillingly.

Of going side.

There is also another motion which is pleasing to the eye, though it bee very labour some to the body, which is to make a horse goe side-long of which hand soeuer the Rider is disposed, and is very necessary in the wars, because it is the auyding of any blow comming from the enemy. This motion when you intend to teach your Horse, you shall draw vp your bridle-hand somewhat strait, and if you determine to haue him goe a side to your Right hand, lay your left Reine close to his necke, and the calue of your left legge close to his side, and as you did in the *Incaualare*, make him lap or put his left legge ouer his Right, then turning your Rod backward, and ierking him gently on the left hinder thigh, make him bring his hinder parts to the Right side also, and stand in an euen line as at the first, then make him remooue his fore-parts more then before, so that he may stand as it were crosse ouer the euen line, and then make him bring his hinder parts after, and stand in an euen line againe: and thus doe til by long practise hee will moue his fore-parts and hinder parts both together, and goe side-long as far as you please, then cherish him: And if you will haue him goe towards your left hand, doe as you did before, vsing all your *helpes* and *correcti- ons* on the Right side onely. And thus much I thinke is sufficient to haue spoke touching all the seuerall lessons meet to be taught to any horse whatsoeuer, whether he be for seruice or for pleasure, and which being performed artfully, carefully, and with patience, you may presume your horse is compleat and perfect, the rather sith

no man can finde out any inuention, or teach any other motions to a horse, which may be good and comely, but you shall easily perceiue, that they are Receiued from some one of these already Rehearsed.

Now if you shall be called to Ride before a *Prince*, you must not obserue the liberty of your owne will, but the state of the *person* before whom you Ride, and the grace of the horse which you Ride: and therefore being come into the Riding place, you shall chuse your ground, so that the *person* before whom you are to Ride may stand in the midst thereof, so as he may wel behold both the passage of the horse to him and from him: then beeing seated in a comely *order*, and euery ornament about you handsome and decent, you shall put your horse gently forth into a comely trot, and being come against the *person* of estate, bow your body downe to the *crest* of your horse, then Raising your selfe againe, passe halfe a score yards beyond him, and there marking out a *narrow ring*, thrust your horse into a gentle gallop, and giue him two or three managing turnes in as short ground as may be, to shew his nimblenesse and Readinesse: then vpon the last turne, his face being towards the *great person*, stop him comely and close, and make him to aduance twice or thrice; then hauing taken breath, put him into a *gallop galliard*, and so passe along the length of the *even furrow* with that salt, making him do it also round about the *ring*: then his face being toward the Prince, stop him and giue him fresh breath, then thrust him into the *Capriole*, now and then making him yerke out behind, yet so as it may be perceiued it is your will, and not the horses malice: and hauing gone about the Ring with that salt, and his face brought to looke vpon the Prince, stop him againe and giue him breath: Then drawing neerer

Riding before
a Prince.

Of the Car-
golo.

to the Prince, you shall beat the turne *Terna*, *Terra*, first in a pretty large compasse, then by smal degrees straitning it a litle and a litle, draw it to the very center where you may giue two or three close flying turnes, and then changing your hands, vndoe all that you did before, til you come to the Rings first largenesse; then the horses face being direct vpon the Prince, stop him, and put him into a coruet, and in that motion hold him a pretty space, making him doe it first in an euen line, first to the right hand, then to the left, now backward, then forward againe: and thus hauing performed euery motion orderly and comely, bowe downe your body to the Prince, and so depart.

To ride for Recreation.

But if you intend to Ride onely for Recreation, then you shall marke what Lesson your horse is most imperfect in, and with that lesson you shal euer when you Ride both begin and end; after it you shall fall to those Lessons which are to your selfe most difficult, and by the practice of them bring your selfe to a perfectnesse, then consequently to all other Lessons, repeating (as it were) euery one ouer more or lesse, least want of vse breed forgetfulnesse, and forgetfulnesse vtter ignorance: but if your Recreation in Riding be tied to any special rules of health, and that your practice there in proceede more from the commandement of your Physitian then your pleasure, then I would wish you in the morning first to begin with a stirring or rough lesson, as the gallop galliard, bounding, or such like, which hauing a little stirred your blood, and made it warme, you shal then calme it againe with a gentle manage, or the galloping of large Rings: then to stir your spirits againe, to bring the stone downe, or procure appetite, passe into the capriole or coruet; and then to make quiet those moued parts,

set

let the turne called *Terra, Terra, the incanalare*, and such like. And thus one while stirring your blood, & another while moderately allaying such stirring, you shall giue your body that due and proper exercise which is most fit for health and long life. Many other wayes this Recreation may be vsed for the good of a mans body, which because particular infirmities must giue particular Rules how and when to vse it, I wil at this time speake no further thereof, but refer the exercise to their owne pleasures which shal practice the same, and to the good they shall finde in the practice.

CHAP. 3.

Of the breeding of all sorts of Horses fit for the Husband-mans vse.

THe mindes of men being swaied with many various motions, take delight sometimes to be Recreated rather with contemplatiue delights, then with actiue pleasures; and there is strong Reason therefore, becaule disability of body, or affaires of the Kingdome or Common-wealth, may take a man from those pre-occupations, which otherwise might stir him to more labourious exercise: and of these contemplatiue Recreations, I can prefer none before that Gentlemanly and beneficial delight of breeding creatures meet for the vse of man, and the good of the Common-wealth wherein he liueth, and of these breedings I cannot esteeme any so excellent, as the breeding of Horses, both for the pleasure we gaine thereby in our owne particular seruice, and also for the strength, defence, and tillage of the kingdome.

He therfore that suteth his Recreation to the breeding of horses, must first haue respect vnto the ground whereon he liueth or enioyeth; for euery ground is not meete

The breeding
of horses.

to breed on, but some too good, some too bad: some too good, because they may be exhausted to a more beneficial commodity, horses having a world of casualties attending on them, and many yeares before the true profite doth arise; and some too bad, because the extreame barrenesse of the same will deny competent nourishment to the thing bred, and so to the losse of time and profit adde mortality.

Grounds to
breed on.

The grounds then meete to breede horses on, would neyther be extreame fruitfull, nor extreame barren, but of an indifferent mixture, yeelding rather a short sweete burthen, then a long, rich and fruitfull; it would rather lie high then low, but howsoever firme and hard vnder the foote; it would bee full of Mole-hils, vncuen treadings, hils, and much cragginessse, to bring colts to nimbleness of foote; it would haue good store of fresh waters, an open sharpe ayre, and some conuenient couert; and this ground is best if it be seuerall and inclosed, yet may be bred vpon though it bee open and in common, onely some more carefulnesse to bee looked for, a little before, and in the time of Foaling. Nay, the grounds which are neyther seuerall nor common, are very good also to breed on, and those be your teathering grounds, which we call particular grounds; for though they bee proper commonly to one man, yet they are not diuided nor eaten otherwise then at the owners pleasure: And these teathering grounds are as good as any grounds for the first nourishing of a Foale, if they be amongst Corne grounds, or any graine except pease onely.

Diuisiō of
grounds.

If you haue much ground to breed on, you shall diuide it into many pastures, the least and barrenest for your Stallion to Run with your Mares in, those which haue least danger of waters are for your Mares to foale in
the

the fruitfullest and of best growth for your Mares to giue milke in, and the most spacious and vneuenest to bring vp your Co'ts in after they are weaned.

For the choyce of a good Stallion, and which is best for our Kingdome, opinion swayeth so far, that a man can hardly giue well-receiued Directions: yet surely if men wil be Ruled by the truth of experience, the best Stallion to beget horses for the wars in the *Courser*, the *Iennet*, or the *Turkes*; the best for coursing and running is the *Barbary*; the best for hunting is the *Bastard courser*, begot of the *English*; the best for the Coach is the *Flemish*, the best for trauaile or burthen is the *English*, and the best for ease is the *Irish-hobby*.

Choice of Stallion, and which are best.

For the choyce of *Mares* you shal greatly respect their shapes and mettals, especially that they bee beautifully fore-handed, for they giue much goodnesse to their Foales: and for their kinds, any of the *Races* before spoken of is very good, or any of them mixt with our true *English Races*, as *Bastard-courser Mare*, *Bastard-Iennet*, *Bastard-Turke*, *Barbary*, &c.

Choyce of Mares.

The best time to put your Stallion & Mares together, is in the middle of *March*, if you haue any *Grasse*, as you should haue great care for that purpose, and one foale falling in *March*, is worth two falling in *May*, because he possesseth, as it were, two winters in a yeare, and is therby so hardned, that nothing can (almost) after impair him, and the best time to take your horse from the Mares againe, is at the end of *April*, or middle of *May*, in which you shal note, that from the middle of *March*, till the midst of *May*, you may at any time put your Stallions to your Mares, and a moneths continuance is euer sufficient: prouided euer, as neere as you can, that you put them together in the increase of the *Moone*; for Foales
got

When to put them together.

Of couering
Mares.

got in the wane are not accounted strong or healthfull.

For couering of Mares, it is to be done two wayes, out of hand, or in hand; out of hand, as when the horse and Mares run together abroad, as is before sayd, or turned loole into some empty barne for three nights one after another, which is the surest and the safest way for a Mares holding; or in hand, early in a morning, and late at an euening two or three dayes together, when you bring the horse to the Mare, and make him couer her once or twice at a time, holding him fast in your hand, and when the act is done, leade him backe to the stable, and in this act you shall euer obserue, as soone as the horse commeth from her backe, presently to cast a payle of cold water on her hinder parts, or else to chase her swiftly vp and downe, for feare by standing still she cast out the seed, which is very ordinary.

To know if a
Mare hold.

To know whether your Mare hold to the horse or no there be diuerse wayes, of which the best is by offering her the horse againe at the next increase of the Moone, which if she willingly receiue, it is a signe she held not before; but if she refuse, then it is most certaine she is sped: or if you poure a spoonefull of cold vinegar into her eare, if she shake onely her head, it is a signe she holds, but if she shake head, body and all, then truly it is a signe that she doth not hold: Lastly, if after she is couered you see her scoure, her coat grow smooth and shining, and that she doth (as it were) renue and increase in liking, then it is a signe she holds: but if she hold at a stay without any amendment, then offer the horse againe, for she is not serued.

To conceiue
male foales.

To make your Mares conceiue most male foales, you shall be sure to keepe your Stallion proude, and your Mare poore, that his lust maistering hers, he may onely be

be predominant and chiefe in the action: many other rules fancie deuileth, but they erre in their endes, and I would by no meanes haue this discourse capable of any vncertainty.

If you haue any aduantage giuen you by friendship, ^{To prouoke lust.} or otherwise, whereby you may haue a Mare at the present very well couered, onely yours is not yet ready for the horse, you shall in this case to prouoke lust in her, giue her to drinke good store of clarified hony and new milke mixt together, and then with a bush of nettles all to nettle her priuy parts, and then immediately offer her the horse.

To keepe your Mares from barrenesse, and to make ^{To keepe Mares from barrenesse.} them euer apt to conceiue foales, you shal by no meanes feed them too extreame fat, but keepe them in a middle state of body, by moderate labour, for the leaner they are when they come to take the horse, the much better they will conceiue.

After your Mares haue beene couered, and that you ^{Ordering Mares after couering.} perceiue in them the markes of conceiuing, you shall let them rest three weekes or a moneth, that the substance may knit; then after moderately labour or trauell them, till you see them spring; and then turne them abroad, and let them runne till they foale; for to house them after is dangerous and vnwholesome.

If your Mare be hard of foaling, or wil not cleanse after she hath foaled, ^{A helpe for Mares after foaling.} you shall take a pint of running water, wherein good store of Fennel hath bene boyled, and as much strong, old, sweet wine, with a fourth part of the best sallet oyle, and hauing mixt them well together, being but luke-warme, poure it into her nostrils, and then hold and stop them close, that she may straine her whole body, and it will presently giue her ease.

As

Ordering
Mares after
cailing.

As soone as your Mare hath foal'd, you shall remove her into the best grasse you haue, which is fresh and vnsoiled, to make her milke spring; and if it be early in the yeare, you shall haue care that there be good shelter in the same, and there let her nourish her foale most part of the Summer following.

Weaning of
foales.

As touching the weaning of foales, though some vse to weane them at *Michaelmas*, or *Martilmas* following, out of a supposition that the winter milke is not good or wholesome, yet they are much deceiued, and if you can by any conuenient meanes (sauing greater losses) let your foales run with their Dammes the whole yeare, euen till they foale againe; for it will keepe the foale better in health, in more lust, and lesse subiect to tendernesse.

Ordering after
the weaning.

When you intend to weane your foales, you shall take them from their Dammes ouer-night, and driue them into some empty house where they may rest, and the Mares be free from their noyles: then on the morning following giue to euery foale fasting a branch or two of *Sauen* annointed or rold in butter, and then hauing fasted two houres after, giue him a little meate, as grasse, hay, or garbidge of Corne, with some cleere water, and do thus three dayes together; then seeing that they haue forgotten their Dammes, geld such colt-foales as you intend to make Geldings of; and after their swellings are past, put them with your other colt-foales into a pasture provided for them by themselves, and your filly-foales into another by themselves: which *Pastures* may either be high Woods, Commons, or such like spacious peeces of ground, where they may Run till they bee ready for the Saddle.

Gelding of
Colts.

Now, albeit I proportion vnto you this manner of gelding of Foales, yet I would haue you know that the best

best and safest way to geld them is, if it may be, vnder the Damme when they sucke, as at nine or at fiftene dayes of age, if the stones appeare, or else so soone as you can by any meanes perceiue them fall downe into the cod, for then there will be no danger of swelling, or other mischiefes, which commonly attend the action. And thus much touching the breeding of Horses, and the obseruations due to the same, through all the courses and passages thereof, as hath bene found by ancient practise and experience, as appeares in my Master. Peece.

CHAP. 4.

Of horses for trauaile, and how to make them amble.

THe Husbandman, whose occupation is the generall affaires of the Common-wealth, as some to the Markets, some to the City, and some to the seates of Iustice, must necessarily bee employed almost in continuall trauaile: and therefore it is meet that he be provided euer of a good and easie trauailing horse.

The markes whereby he shal chuse a good trauailing horse, are these: hee shall be of good colour and shape, leane headed, and round fore-headed, a ful eye, open nostrill, wide iawed, loose thropled, deepe neckt, thin crested, broad breast, flat chinde, out ribd, cleane limb'd, short ioynted, strong hooued, wel mettald, neither fiery, nor crauing, strong in euery member, and easie to mount and get vp vpon; he shall follow without haling, and stand still when he is restrained.

The markes of
a good trauai-
ling horse.

Now forasmuch as there are a world of good horses, which are not easie, and a world of easie horses which are not good, you shall by these directions following make any horse amble whatsoeuer: first then you shall vnderstand that practise hath made diuers men belceue that

To make a
horse amble.

Diuersē waies
of ambling.

that diuerse wayes they can make a horse amble, as by gagging them in the mowthes, by rolling them in deepe earth, by the helpe of shoes, by gallopping and tiring, or such like, all which are ill and imperfect: yet the truth is, there is but one certaine and true way to compass it, and that is to make a strong girth webbe, flat and well quilted with cotten, foure pasternes for the smals of his fore-legs, vnder his knees, and for the smals of his hinder legges somewhat below the spauin ioynts: to these pasternes you shall fixe strong straps of leather, with good iron buckles, to make shorter or longer at pleasure; and hauing plac't them about his foure legges, you shall take two seuerall round roapes, of an easie twist, made with strong loopes at either end, and not aboue eight handfuls in length: and these the horse standing to a true proportion, you shall fasten to the foure straps of leather, to wit, one of them to his neere fore-legge and his neere hinder legge, and the other to his farre fore-legge and his farre hinder-legge, which is cald amongst horse-men trammeling: with these you shall let him walke in some incloled peece of ground, till he can so perfectly goe in the same, that when at any time you offer to chase him, you may see him amble truly and swiftly: then you shall take his backe, and ride him with the same trammels, at least three or foure times a day, till you find that he is so perfect, that no way can be so rough and vneuen, as to compell him to alter his stroke, or go vnanimly. This done, you may first take away one tramell, then after the other, and onely wreath about vnder his foure fet-lockes thicke and heavy great roles of hay or straw-ropes, and so ride him with the same a good space after, for it will make him amble easie; then cut them away, and ride and exercise him without any thing but the ordinary helpe

Of trammel-
ling.

Of wisping.

helpe of the bridles, and there is no doubt but hee will keepe his pace, to your full contentment and pleasure.

Now during this time of your teaching, if your horse strike not a large stroke & over-reach enough, then you shall make the trammell the straiter, but if he over-reach too much, then you shall giue it more liberty: and herein you shall finde that an inch straitning, or an inch enlarging, will adde or abate at least halfe a foote, an whole foote and direct stroke. And thus much touching the teaching of any horse to amble, of what nature or quality soeuer hee bee, or how vnapt or vnroward soeuer to learne.

CHAP. 5.

Of the ordering and dieting of the hunting horse.

SOME loue hunting for the exercise of their owne bodies, some for the chase they hunt, some for the running of the hounds, and some for the training of their horses, whereby they may find the excellency of their goodnesse and indurance: to him therefore which placeth his delight in the goodnesse of his horse, I would wish him thus to order and diet him, and he shall most assuredly come to the true knowledge of the best worth which is within him; and if in these rules which I now shew, I be lesse curious then formerly I haue bene, let no man wonder thereat, but know that *Time* (which is the mother of experience) doth in our labours shew vs more new and more neerer wayes to our ends, then at the first we conceiued: And though when I first practiced this Art, I knew not how to bring a very fat horse from *Michaelmas* till *Christmas* to shew his utmost perfection, I know now in two moneths (though neuer so foule)
F how

how to make him fit for any wager, daring now boldly to adventure on that, with which before I thought almost present death to offer: thus doth observation and labour finde out the darkeſt ſecrets in Art.

Taking vp of
the hunting
Horse.

To beginne then with the firſt ordering of a hunting horſe, you ſhal know that the beſt time to take him from graſſe is about *Bartholomew-tide*, the day being faire, dry and pleaſant; and as ſoone as he is taken vp, to let him ſtand all that night in any vaſt houſe, to empty his body; the next day ſtable him, and giue him wheat ſtraw if you pleaſe, but no longer in any wiſe; for though the olde Rule is to take vp horſes bellies with ſtraw, yet it ſtraitneth the guts, heats the liner, and hurteth the wind: therefore let only moderate exerciſe, as riding him forth to water morning and euening, and other airings, doe what you expect ſtraw ſhould: and for his foode, let it be hay that is ſweet, though rough, and eyther old, or at leaſt well ſweat in the Mowe.

Cloathing the
Horse.

After his belly is emptied, you ſhall cloath him firſt with a ſingle cloath, whileſt the heat endureth, and after with more, as you ſhall ſee occaſion require; and when you beginne to cloath the horſe, then you ſhall dreſſe, curry, and Rub him alſo. Now for aſmuch as it is a Rule with ignorant horſe-men, that if they haue but the name of keeping a hunting-horſe, they wil with all care (without any reaſon) lay many cloathes vpon him, as if it were a ſpeciall phyſicke; you ſhall know they are much deceiued therein, and may ſooner doe hurt then good with multiplicity of cloathes: therefore to cloath a horſe right, cloath him according to the weather, and the temper of his body: as thus, if you ſee your horſe be ſlight, ſmooth and well-coloured, then cloath him temperately, as with a ſingle cloath of canuaſe or ſacke-cloth at the moſt;

moſt; and if then as the yeare growes colder, you finde his haire riſe or ſtare about his necke, flankes, or outward parts, then you ſhall adde too a woollen cloath, or more if neede require, till his haire fall ſmooth againe; holding it for your rule, that a rough coat ſhews want of cloaths, and a ſmooth coat, cloathing enough: yet if your horſe haue beene cleane fed, taken exerciſe ſufficient, and hath not much glut within him, if then you finde that in the night he ſweateth in his cloathes, then it is a ſigne hee is ouer-fed: but if he be foule inwardly, or hath not ſweat formerly, and now ſweates comining to good feeding, then you ſhall augment rather then diminifh any cloathing, for his foulneſſe but then breaketh out, and being euacuated, he will come to drineſſe of body againe, and ſo continue all the yeare after: and ſurely for an ordinary proportion of cloathes, I hold a Canuaſe cloth, and a cloath of Houſe-wiues wollen to be at full ſufficient for a hunting-horſe.

A Hunting-horſe would be dreſt in his dayes of Reſt, twice a day, that is, before hee goe to his morning watering, and before he goe to his euening watering: for the manner of his dreſſing, after hee is vncloathed, you ſhall firſt curry him from the tips of the eare to the ſetting on of his taile, al his whole body moſt entire y ouer with an iron combe, his legs vnder the knees and cambrels onely excepted; then you ſhall duſt him; then curry him againe all ouer with a round briuſh of Briſtles, then duſt him the ſecond time, then rub all the looſe haire away with your hands wet in cleane water, and ſo rub till the horſe be as dry as at the firſt, then rub all his body and limbes ouer with an haire-cloath: laſtly, rubbe him ouer with a fine white linnen rubber, then picke his eyes, noſtriles, ſheath, cods, uell, and feete very cleane, and ſo

Of dreſſing the
hunting horſe.

cloath him, and stop him round with wispes, if you water within the house, otherwise saddle him after his body is wrapt about in a woollen cloth, and so Ride him forth to the water.

Of watering
the hunting
horse.

The best water for a hunting horse, is either a running Riuer, or a cleare spring, remote from the stable a mile, or a mile and a halfe at most, and neere vnto some plaine peece of ground, where you may scope and gallop after hee hath drunke; and as soone as you bring your horse to the water, let him take his full draught without trouble or interruption: then gallop and scope him vp and downe a little, and so bring him to the water againe, and let him drinke what hee please: and then gallop him againe: and thus do till you find he will drinke no more, then having scop't him a little, walke him with all gentleness home, and there cloath him vp, stop him round with great soft wispes, and so let him stand an houre vpon his bridle, and then feed him.

Of feeding the
hunting horse

To speake first of the food for hunting horses, the most ordinary is good sweete sound oates, neither thoroughly dried with age, or else on the kilne, or in the Sun, and if your horse be either low of flesh, or not of perfect stomach, if to two parts of those oates you adde a third part of cleane old beanes, it shal be very good and wholesome, and if your horse be in diet for a match, and haue lost his stomach, if then you cause those beanes to be spelted vpon a milne, and so mixt with oats it wil recouer him. The next food, which is somewhat stronger & better, is bread thus made: take two bushels of good cleane beanes, and one bushell of wheate, and grinde them together; then through a fine Raunge, bolt out the quantity of two peckes of pure meale, and bake it in two or three loaves by it selfe, and the rest sift through a meale sic, and knead

knead it with water and good store of Barne, and so bake it in great loaves, and with the courser Bread feede your horse in his rest, and with the finer against the daies of sore labour. Now for the houres of his feeding, it shal bee in the morning after his comming from water, an houre after high noone: after his comming from his evening water, and at nine or ten of the clocke at night vpon the dayes of his Rest, but vpon the dayes of his exercise, two houres after he is thoroughly cold inwardly and outwardly, and then after according to the houres before mentioned. Lastly, for the proportion of food, you shall keepe no certayne quantity, but according to the horses stomacke, that is to say, you shall feede him by a little at once, so long as he eates with a good appetite, but when hee begins to trifle or fumble with his meate, then to giue him no more. Now for his hay, you shal see that it be dry short vplandish hay, and so it be sweete, respect not how course or rough it is, sith it is more to scoure his teeth and coole his stomacke, then for any nourishment expected from it.

Touching the horses exercise, which is only in the following of the hounds, you shall be sure to traine him after those which are most swift & speedy, for so you shall know the truth, and not be deceiued in your opinion. Touching the dayes, it shal be twice a weeke at least, but most commonly thrice. As for the quantity of his exercise, it must be according to his foulness or cleanness: for if he be very foule, you must then exercise moderately to breake his grease: if halfe foule, halfe cleane, then somewhat more to melt his grease; and if altogether cleane, then you may take what you please of him (provided that you do nothing to discourage his spirits, to abate his mettall, or to lame his limbes) and after euery

The exercise of
the horse.

dayes exercise be assured to giue him either the same night, or the next day following, something by way of scouring or otherwise, to take away the grease formerly melted, by meanes whereof you shall bee euer sure to keepe your horse in all good hea'th and perfection.

The scouring
of the horse.

The best and most excellentest way to scour or purge your horse from all grease, glut or filthinesse within his body, which is a secret hitherto was neuer either sufficiently taught, or perfectly learned, is to take of Annise-seeds three ounces, of Cummine-seeds six drammes, of Carthamus a dramme and a halfe, of Fennegreake-seed one ounce two drammes, of Brimstone one ounce and a halfe, beate all these to a fine powder, and searse them; then take of sallet oyle a pinte and two ounces, of hony a pound and a halfe, and of white wine foure pints, then with as much fine white meale as wil suffice, make all into a strong stiffe paste, and kneade and worke it well: this paste keepe in a cleane cloth, for it will last long, and after your horse hath bene hunted, and is at night or in the morning exceeding thirstie, take a ball thereof as much as a mans fist, and wash and dissolue it in a gallon or two of cold water, and it will make the water looke white like milke: then offer it the horse to drinke in the darke, least the colour displease him: if he drinke it, then feede him; but if he refuse to drinke it, yet care not, but let him fast without drink till he take it, which assuredly he wil doe in twice or thrice offering, and after once he hath taken it, be then assured he will forsake any other drinke for it: of this drinke your horse can neuer take too much, nor too oft, if he haue exercise: otherwise it feeds too sore. For all inward infirmities whatsoeuer it is a present remedy: therefore I would not wish any horseman of vertue at any time to be without it; and be-
ing

ing once made, it wil last three or foure moneths at least.

After your horse hath bene exercised either with hunting, running, traiege-fents, or otherwise: you shall euer coole him well in the field before you bring him home: but being come to the stable, you shall neither wash nor walke, but instantly house him: giue him store of fresh litter, and rub him therewith, and with dry cloathes, till there be not a wet haire about him, then cloath him with his ordinary cloathes, and wispe him round: then cast another spare cloth ouer him, which you may bate at your pleasure, and so let him stand till it be time to feed him. And thus you may keepe any hunting horse either for match or otherwise, in as good state and strength as any horse-man in this Kingdome, though he exceed you farre both in reputation and experience.

Ordering a horse after exercise.

CHAP. 6.

Of the ordering and dyeting of the running horse.

IF any Husbandman haue his minde taken vp onely with the delight of running horses, which is a Noble sport, and though not of so long indurance, yet equall with any before spoke of, he shall for the bettering of his knowledge giue to his memory these few rules following, by which he shal rightly order and dyet him.

First, for his taking vp from grasse (for there for order ^{Of histaking} sake we must first begin) it shall be at the same time of ^{vp.} the yere, and after the same manner that you tooke vp your hunting horse, and till you haue enseamed him, hardned his flesh, taken away his inward grease, and brought him to a good perfectnesse of winde, you shall cloath him, dresse him, water him, feed him, exercise him, purge him, and order him after labour, in all poynts and all things as you did your hunting horse.

Of clothing
him.

When he is thus cleane of body and winde, you shall then lay on him some more Cloathes then you did on your Hunting horse, to purge his body a little the more, and to make him the more apt to sweate, and euacuate humours as they shall grow: the ordinary quantity wherof would be a warme narrow woollen cloath about his body, on either side his heart, then a fairewhire sheet, a woollen cloth about it, and a canuase cloath or two about it, and before his breast a woollen cloth at least two double: he would continually stand vppon cleane litter, and haue his stable very darke, and perfumed with Iuniper, when as the strength of his dung shall annoy it.

Of dressing
him.

For his dressing, it shal be in all points done as you did to your hunting horse, onely to dresse him once a day is sufficient, and that euer in the after-noone: but for rubbing his limbes or body with dry clothes or wispes, you shall doe that as often as you come into the stable, provided that you turne but his cloathes vp, but not take them from his body.

Of watering
him.

You shall water your Running horse, as you watered your hunting horse, and giue him the same exercise after it, onely you shall not bring him into the stable of at least an houre or more after he is watered.

Of feeding
him.

The best foods for your Running horse, is either good sweete oates well dried, sunned, and beaten, or bread made of two parts wheate, and but one part Beanes, and boulded, and sifted, and knodden, as was before shewed: onely if you adde to your better sort of bread the whites of twenty or thirty egges, and with the barme a little Ale also, it wil be much the better; for you shal not respect how little water you vse at all: the houres you feed in, and the quantity of the food shall be the same, and in the same manner as was mentioned before, for the hunting

hunting horse, yet with these obseruations, that if your horse be very leane, sickly, & haue a weake stomack, that then you may as before is shewed, giue him with his oats a few spelted beanes, or else wash his oates in strong Ale or Beere, or in the whites of a couple of egges.

Touching his exercise, it consisteth in two kindes, the one ayring, the other coursing: Ayring is a moderate and gentle Exercise, which you shall vse morning and euening, by riding or leading your horse a foot pace (but Riding is better, and lesse in danger of cold) in the morning after his water vp to the hils, and in the euening after his water by the Riuers side, by the space of an houre or two together; and before you leade him forth to aire, you shall be sure to giue him a rere egge broken into his mouth, as soone as his Bridle is put on, for it wil increase winde: and this ayring you shal by no meanes forbear, but vpon his dayes of purging or sweating, or when it much raineth, for then to ayre is vnwholsome. Againe, if your Horse be very fat, you shall aire before Sunne rise, and after Sunne set: but if he be leane, then you shall let him haue all the strength and comfort of the Sunne you can deuise; and during this airing, you shall be sure that your horse be cloathed very warme, especially before the breast, and on each side the heart, for cold to a Running horse is mortall.

Of his exercise
by ayring.

You shall course your horse according to his strength and ability of body, that is to say, twice a weeke, thrice, or as oft as you see cause, and you shall course him sometimes in his cloathes to make him sweate, and consume grease, and that must be done moderately and gently; and sometimes without his cloath, to increase wind, and that shall be done sharpely and swiftly: you shal by keeping your horse fasting the night before, be sure that his
body

Exercise by
coursing.

Of clothing
him.

When he is thus cleane of body and winde, you shall then lay on him some more Cloathes then you did on your Hunting horse, to purge his body a little the more, and to make him the more apt to sweate, and euacuate humours as they shall grow: the ordinary quantity wherof would be a warme narrow woollen cloath about his body, on either side his heart, then a fairewhite sheet, a woollen cloth about it, and a canuase cloath or two about it, and before his breast a woollen cloth at least two double: he would continually stand vppon cleane litter, and haue his stable very darke, and perfumed with Iuniper, when as the strength of his dung shall annoy it.

Of dressing
him.

For his dressing, it shal be in all points done as you did to your hunting horse, onely to dresse him once a day is sufficient, and that euer in the after-noone: but for rubbing his limbes or body with dry clothes or wispes, you shall doe that as often as you come into the stable, provided that you turne but his cloathes vp, but not take them from his body.

Of watering
him.

You shall water your Running horse, as you watered your hunting horse, and giue him the same exercise after it, only you shall not bring him into the stable of at least an houre or more after he is watered.

Of feeding
him.

The best foods for your Running horse; is either good sweete oates well dried, sunned, and beaten, or bread made of two parts wheate, and but one part Beanes, and boulded, and sifted, and knodden, as was before shewed: onely if you adde to your better sort of bread the whites of twenty or thirty egges, and with the barme a little Ale also, it wil be much the better; for you shal not respect how little water you vse at all: the houres you feed in, and the quantity of the food shall be the same, and in the same manner as was mentioned before, for the
hunting

hunting horse, yet with these obseruations, that if your horse be very leane, sickly, & haue a weake stomack, that then you may as before is shewed, giue him with his oats a few spelted beanes, or else wash his oates in strong Ale or Beere, or in the whites of a couple of egges.

Touching his exercise, it consisteth in two kindes, the one ayring, the other coursing: Ayring is a moderate and gentle Exercise, which you shall vse morning and euening, by riding or leading your horse a foot pace (but Riding is better, and lesse in danger of cold) in the morning after his water vp to the hils, and in the euening after his water by the Riuers side, by the space of an houre or two together; and before you leade him forth to aire, you shall be sure to giue him a rere egge broken into his mouth, as soone as his Bridle is put on, for it wil increase winde: and this ayring you shal by no meanes forbear, but vpon his dayes of purging or sweating, or when it much raineth, for then to ayre is vnholsome. Again, if your Horse be very fat, you shall aire before Sunne rise, and after Sunne set: but if he be leane, then you shall let him haue all the strength and comfort of the Sunne you can deuise; and during this airing, you shall be sure that your horse be cloathed very warme, especially before the breast, and on each side the heart, for cold to a Running horse is mortall.

Of his exercise
by ayring.

You shall course your horse according to his strength and ability of body, that is to say, twice a weeke, thrice, or as oft as you see cause, and you shall course him sometimes in his cloathes to make him sweate, and consume grease, and that must be done moderately and gently; and sometimes without his cloath, to increase wind; and that shall be done sharpely and swiftly: you shal by keeping your horse fasting the night before, be sure that his body

Exercise by
coursing.

body be empty before he do courle : to wash his tongue and nostrils with vinegar, or to pisse in his mouth ere you take his backe, is very wholesome : you shall leade him in your hand well and warme cloathed to the course, and there vncloath him, and rub his limbes well : then hauing courst him, after a little breath-taking cloath him againe, and so Ride him home, there rub him thoroughly, and let him stand till he be fully cold, which perceiued, let his first meate you giue him, be a handfull or two of the eares of pollard wheate : then after, his ordinary foode as afore-sayd.

Of sweates.

There is also another exercise for your Running horse, which is, sweats in his cloathes, eyther abroad or in the house : for sweates in his cloathes abroad, they are those which are taken vpon the course, and are formerly spoke of, that they must bee giuen by a moderate gallopping, no main Running, and as soone as your horse hath past ouer his course, and is in a high sweat, you shall instantly haue him home, and there lay more cloathes vpon him, and keepe him stirring till he haue sweat so in the stable an houre or more ; then abate his cloathes by little and little, till hee be perfectly cooled and dried, which you must further, by Rubbing him continually with drye cloathes, and by laying dry cloathes on, and taking the wet away : but for sweates in his cloathes, without any exercise abroad, you shall giue them eyther when the weather is so much vncleasonable, that you cannot goe forth, or when your horse is so much in danger of lamenessse, that you dare not strayne him ; and you shall doe it thus : first take a blanket folded and warmed very hot, and wrap it about his body, then ouer it lay two or three more, and wispe them round, then ouer them as many couerlids, and pin them fast and close ; then make the
horse

horse stirre vp and downe in the stable till hee begin to sweat; then lay on more cloathes, and as the sweat tricketh downe his face, so rub it away with dry cloathes, till he haue sweat sufficiently: then (as before is shewed) abate the cloathes by little and little, and rub him in euery part, till he be as dry as at first.

After euery course or sweat, you shall scoure or purge your horse in the same manner, and with the same medicine that you did your Hunting horse; for it is the best that can by arte be inuented, being both a purge and a Restorative, cleansing and comforting all the parts of a Horses body: but if you thinke it purgeth not enough, then you shall take twenty Raisins of the Sunne, the stones pickt out, and ten Figs slit in the midst, boile them in a pottle of faire running water, till it come to be thick, then mixe it with powder of Lyquoras, Anniseedes, and Sugar-candy, til it come to a stiffe paste, then make pretty round bals thereof, and roule them vp in butter, and giue your horse three or foure of them the next morning after his sweat or course, and ride him an houre after, and then set him vp warme.

Of scouring
him.

After your horse hath beene courst or sweat, and is as before sayd, cold and dry, you shall then vnbridle him, giue him some few wheat eares, and then at an houre or two after, giue him a very sweet mash, then some bread, after which at his due houre dresse him, and giue him when you finde him thirsty some cold water, with a ball of your leauen dissolued into it, and so let him stand till you feede him for all night.

Ordering after
exercise.

Course not your horse sore for a least foure or five dayes before you Run your Match, least the sorenesse of his limbes abate him of his speede.

Generall Rules
for a Running
horse.

Except your horse be a very foule feeder, muzzle him
not.

not about two or three nights before his match, and the night before his bloody courses.

Giue your horse as wel his gentle courses as his sharp courses vpon the Race he must run, that hee may as well finde comfort as displeasure thereon.

In training of your horse, obserue not the number of the miles, but the labour fit for your horse.

Be sure vpon the match day that your horse be empty and that he take his Rest vntroubled, till you prepare to leade him forth.

Shoe your horse euer a day before you Run him, that the paine of the hammers knocks may be out of his feet.

Saddle your horse on the Race day in the stable before you leade him forth, and fixe both the pannell and the girths to his backe and sides with shoe-makers wax, to prevent all dangers.

Leade your horse to his course with all gentlenesse, and giue him leaue to smell to other horses dung, that thereby he may be inticed to stale and empty his body as he goes.

When you come to the place where you must start, first rub his limbes wel, then vncloath him, then take his Backe, and the word giuen, start him with all gentlenesse and quietnesse that may be, least doing any thing rashly you happen to choake him in his owne winde.

And thus much for the ordering and dyeting of the Running horse, and the particularities belonging to the same.

CHAP. 7.

The ordering of the trauailing horse.

NOW for our Husbandmans trauailing horse, which is to carry him in his iournies, and about his businesse

nesse in the Country, he shall first feed him with the best sweet hay, drye oates, or drye beanes and oates mixt together: in his trauaile he shall feede him according to his stomacke, more or lesse, and in his Rest at a certaine proportion, as halfe a pecke at each watering, is vtterly sufficient.

Generall rules
for a trauailing
Horse.

In your trauaile feede your horse early, that hee may take his Rest soone.

In trauaile by no meanes wash nor walke your horse, but be sure to rub him cleane.

Water him a mile before you come to your Inne, or more, as shal lye in your iourney; or if you faile thereof, forbear it till next morning, for water hath often done hurt, want of water neuer did any.

Let your horse neyther eate nor drinke, when hee is extreame hot, for both are vnwholesome.

When the dayes are extreame hot, labour your horse morning and euening, and forbear high-noone.

Take not your saddle off suddainly, but at leisure, and laying on the cloth, set on the saddle again til he be cold.

Litter your horse deepe, and in the dayes of his Rest, let it lye also vnder him.

Dresse your horse twice a day when he rests, and once when he trauailes.

If the horse be stoned, let him goe to soyle, and be purged with grasse in May; a moneth is time long enough, and that grasse which growes in Orchards vnder trees is best.

Let blood Spring and Fall, for they are the best times to preuent sicknesses.

In your iourning light at euery steepe hill, for it is a great Refreshing and comfort to your horse.

Before you sleepe euery night in your iourney, see all
your

your horses feet stopt with Oxe dung, for it taketh away the heat of trauaile and surbating.

Many other necessary Rules there are, but so depending vpon these already shewed, that who so keepeth them, shall not be ignorant of any of the rest, for they differ more in name then nature.

CHAP. 8.

How to cure all generall inward sicknesses in horses, which trouble the whole body: of Feuers of all sorts, Plagues, infections, and such like.

Sicknesses in generall are of two kindes, one offending the whole body, the other a particular member: the first hidden, and not visible, the other apparant and knowne by his outward demonstration. Of the first then which offendeth the whole body, are Feuers of all sorts, as the Quotidian, the Tertian, the Quartan, the Continuall, the Hittique, the Feuers in Autumne, in Summer, or in Winter, the Feuer by surfeite, Feuer pestilent, Feuer accidentall, or the generall plague. They are all knowne by these signes: much trembling, panting, and sweating, a tullen countenance that was woont to be cheerefull, hot breath, faintnesse in labour, decay of stomacke, and costiuenesse in the body: any, or all of which when you perceiue, first let the horse blood, and after give him this drinke: Take of *Selladine*, roots and leaues and al, a good handfull, as much *wormewood*, and as much *Rew*, wash them well, and then bruisse them in a mortar, which done, boyle them in a quart of Ale well, then strayne them, and adde to the lyquer halfe a pound of sweet butter, then being but luke warme, giue it the horse to drinke: or halfe an ounce of *Diapense* in a pint of *Muskadine*.

The Cure.

CHAP.

CHAP. 9.

Of the Head-ache, Frenzie, or Staggers.

THe signes to know these diseases, which indeede are all of one nature, and worke all one effect of mortality, are handing downe of the head, watry eies, rage and reeling: and the cure is, to let the horse blood in the neck three mornings together, and euery morning to take a great quantity: then after each mornings blood letting, to giue the horse this drinke: Take a quart of Ale, and boyle it with a big white bread crust, then take it from the fire, and dissolue three or foure spoonefuls of hony into it, then luke warme giue it the horse to drinke, and couer his temples ouer with a playster of pitch, and keep his head exceeding warme; let his meate be litle, and his stable darke. But to giue him the former quantity of *Diapente*, cyther in Muskadine, or hony water, is the best cure.

CHAP. 10.

Of the sleeping Euill.

TH E sleeping Euill or Lethargy in horses proceedes from cold, steamy, moyst humours, which binde vp the vitall parts, and makes them dull and heauy: The signes are, continuall sleeping, or desire thereunto. The cure is, to keepe him much waking, and twice in one weeke to giue him as much sweet Sope (in nature of a pill) as a Ducks egge, and then after giue him to drinke a little new milke and honey, which is the onely cure at the first, for this disease. But to be certayne, I pray looke in my Master-peece, and there you shall finde of the infirmity, more largely discoursed of, this being but a generall Cure of all Cattle, and not particularly handled, of horses, as that is.

The Cure. 9

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Of the Falling-cuill, Planet-strooke, Night-Mare, or Palsey.

THough these Diseases haue feuerall faces, and looke as though there were much difference betweene them, yet they are in nature all one, and proceed all from one offence, which is onely cold flegmaticke humours, ingendred about the braine, and benumbing the senses, weakning the members, sometimes causing a horse to fall downe, and then it is called the Falling-cuill: sometimes weakning but one member onely, then it is called Planet-strooke: sometimes oppressing a horses stomach, and making him sweat in his sleepe, and then it is called the night-Mare: And sometimes spoiling an especiall member, by some strange contraction, and then it is called a Palsey. The cure for any of these infirmities, is to giue the horse this purging pill: Take of Tarre three spoonfuls, of sweet butter the like quantity, beate them well together with the powder of *Lyquoras*, *Aniseedes*, and *Sugar-candy*, till it be like paste, then make it into three round balles, and put into each Ball two or three clones of Garlicke, and so giue them vnto the horse, obseruing to warme him both before and after, and keepe him fasting two or three houres likewise, both before and after.

The Cure.

CHAP. XII.

Of the generall Crampe, or Convulsion of sinewes.

CRamps are taken to be the contracting or drawing together of the Sinewes of any one member: but Convulsions are when the whole body, from the setting on of the head to the extremest parts, are generally contracted and stifned. The cure of eyther is, first to chafe and

The Cure.

and rub the member contracted with Vinegar and common oyle, and then to wrap it all ouer with wet Hay, or rotten Litter, or else with wet woollen cloathes, eyther of which, is a present Remedy.

CHAP. 13.

Of any cold or cough whatsoeuer, wet or dry, or for any Consumption or putrifaction of the lungs whatsoeuer.

A Cold is got by vnnaturall heates, and soo suddaine coolings, and these colds ingender coughs, & those coughs putrifaction or rottennesse of the Lungs. The cure therefore for them all in generall, is to take a handfull or two of the white and greenish mosse which grows vpon an old Oke pole, or any old Oke wood: and boyle it in a quart of milke till it be thicke, and being cold turned to Ielly, then straine it, and giue it the horse lukewarme euery morning till his cough end: Or else take three quarters of an ounce of the conserue of *Elicampane*, and dissolue it in a pint of Sacke, and lukewarme giue it the horse fasting, then Ride him after it, and let him vp warme, feede as ordinary times, thus doe three mornings together.

The Cure.

CHAP. 14.

Of the running Glanders, or mourning of the Chinc.

TAke of *Auripigmentum* two drams, of *Tussilaginis* made into powder as much, then mixing them together with Turpentine till they be like past, and making thereof little cakes, dry them before the fire: Then take a Chafing-dish and coales, and laying one or two of the cakes thereon, couer them with a tunnell, and then the smoake rising, put the tunnel into the horses nostrils, and let the smoake got vp into his head: which done,

G

Ride

ride the horse till he sweat: do thus once every morning before he be watered, till the running at his nostriles cease, and the kirkels vnder his chaps weare away.

CHAP. 15.

Of Hide bound, or consumption of the flesh.

Hide bound or consumption of the flesh, proceedeth from vnreasonable trauaile, disorderly diet, & many surfeits. It is knowne by a generall dislike and leanness over the whole body, and by the sticking of the skinn close to the body, in such sort that it wil not rise from the body. The cure is first to let the horse blood, and then giue him to drinke three or foure mornings together, a quart of new milke, with two spoonfuls of hony, and one ounce of *London Treacle*: then let his food be eyther sodden Barly, warme Graines and salt, or Beanes spleted in a mill; his drinke Mash.

The Cure.

CHAP. 16.

Of the breast paine, or any other sicknesse proceeding from the heart, as the Anticor, and such like.

These diseases proceed from too ranke feeding, and much fatnesse: the signes are, a faulting in his forelegges, a disablenesse to bow downe his necke, and a trembling ouer all his body. The cure is, to let him blood, and giue him three mornings together two spoonfuls of *Diapente*, in a quart of Ale or Beere; for it alone putteth away all infection from the heart.

The Cure.

CHAP. 17

Of tyred Horses.

If your horse be tyred, eyther in iourning, or in any hunting match, your best helpe for him is to giue him warme

warne vrine to drinke, and letting him blood in the mouth, to suffer him to licke vp and swallow the same. Then if you can come where any Nettles are, to rub his mouth and sheath well therewith: then gently to Ride him vntill you come to your Resting place, where set him vp very warne; and before you goe to bed, giue him fixe Spoonefuls of *Aqua vita* to drinke, and as much prouender as hee will eate. The next morning rub his legges with sheepes-sonne oyle, and it will bring fresh nimblenesse vnto his sinewes.

CHAP. 18.

Of diseases in the Stomacke, as Surfeits, loathing of meates or drinke, or such like.

IF your horse with the glot of prouender, or eating raw food, haue giuen such offence to his stomacke, that hee casteth vp all he eateth or drinketh, you shall first giue him a comfortable diench, as *Diapente*, or *Treaphamicon* in Ale or Beere; and then keeping him fasting, let him haue no foode, but what hee eateth out of your hand, which would be Bread well bak't and old, and after euery two or three bits a Locke of sweet hay: and his drinke would be onely new milke till his stomacke haue gotten strength: and in a bagge you shall commonly hang at his nose lowre browne-bread steep't in vinegar, at which he must euer smell, and his stomacke will quickly come againe to his first strength.

CHAP. 19.

Of foundring in the body.

Foundring in the body is of all surfeits the mortallest and soonest gotten: it proceedeth from intemperate riding a horse when he is fat, and then it daingly suffering him

The Cure.

him to take cold : then washing a fat horse there is nothing sooner bringeth this infirmity. The signes are sadness of countenance, staring haire, stiffness of limbe, and losse of belly : and the cure is onely to giue him wholesome strong meat, as bread of cleane beanes, and warme drinke, and for two or three mornings together a quart of Ale brewed with Pepper, and Cynamon, and an ounce of London Treacle.

CHAP. 20.

Of the hungry Euill

The Cure.

THe Hungry Euill is an vnnaturall and ouer-hasty greedinesse in a horse to deuoure his meat faster then he can chew it, and is only knowne by his greedy snatch- ing at his meat, as if he would deuoure it whole: the cure is, to giue him to drinke Milke and Wheate-meale mixt together by a quart at a time, and to feede him with pro- uender by a little and a little, till he forsake it,

CHAP. 21.

Of the diseases of the Liver, as inflammations, obstructions, and consumptions.

The Cure

THe Liuer, which is the vessell of blood, is subiect to many diseases, according to the distemperature of the blood; and the signes to know it, is a stinking breath, and a mutuall looking towards his body : and the cure is to take *Arisiolochea longa*, and boyle it in running water, till the halfe part be consumed, and let the horse drinke continually thereof, and it will cure all euils about the Liuer, or any inward conduits of blood.

CHAP. 22.

Of the diseases of the Gall, and especially of the Yellowe.

From the ouer-flowing of the Gall, or rather want of the Gal, which is the vessell of choller, spring many mortall

mortall diseases, especially the Yellowes, which is an extreame faint-mortall sicknesse, if it be not prevented betime: the signes are yellownesse of the eyes and skin, and chiefly vnderneath his vpper lip next vnto his fore-teeth, a suddaine and faint falling downe by the high way, or in the stable, and an vniuersall sweate ouer all the body. The cure is, first to let the horse blood in the neeke, in the mouth, and vnder the eyes; then take *The Cure.* two penny-worth of Saffron, which being dried and made into fine powder, mixe it with sweete butter, and in manner of a pill giue it in bals to the horse, three mornings together, let his drinke bee warme, and his hay sprinkled with water: A quart of a strong decoction of *Selladine* helpes it also.

CHAP. 23.

Of the sicknes of the Spleene.

THe Spleene, which is the vessel of Melancholy, when it is over-charged therewith, growes painefull, hard, and great, in such sort that sometimes it is visible. The signes to know it, is much groaning, hasty feeding, and a continuall looking to his left side onely. *The Cure* The cure is, take *Agrimony*, and boyle a good quantity of it in the water, which the horse shall drinke; and chopping the leaues small, mixe them very well with sweete *May* butter, and giue the horse two or three good round bals thereof, in the manner of Pilles.

CHAP. 24.

Of the dropie or euill habit of the body.

THe Dropie is that euill habit of the body, which ingendred by surfeits and vnreasonable labour, altereth the colours and complexions of horses, & changeth the haire,

The Cure.

haire, in such an vnaturall sort, that a man shall not know the Beast, with which hee hath beene most familiar. The cure is, to take a handfull or two of *Wormewood*, and boyling it in Ale or Beere, a quart or better, giue it the horse to drinke luke-warme Morning and evening, and let him onely drinke his water at noone time of the day.

CHAP. 25.

Of the Collicke, Belly-ake, and Belly-bound.

The Cure.

THe Chollicke or Belly-ake is a fretting, gnawing, or swelling of the Belly, or great bag, proceeding from windy humours, or from the eating of greene corn or pulse, hot graines without Salt or labour, or bread dowe bak't: and Belly-bound is when a horse cannot dung. The cure of the chollicke or Belly-ake is, to take good store of the hearb *Dill*, and boile it in the water you giue your horse to drinke; but if he cannot dung, then you shall boyle in his water good store of the hearbe called *Fenegreke*, and it will make him loose without danger or hurting.

CHAP. 26.

Of the Laxe or bloody fluxe.

The Cure.

THe Laxe, or bloody fluxe, is an vnaturall loosenesse in a horses body, which not being stayed, will for want of other excrement, make a horse voyd blood onely. The cure is, take a handfull of the hearb *Shepherds-purse*, and boyle it in a quart of strong Ale, and when it is luke-warme, take the seeds of the hearb *Wood-rose* stamp't, and put it therein, and giue it the horse to drinke.

CHAP.

CHAP. 27.

Of the falling of the Fundament.

THis commeth through milke and weakenesse, and the cure is: Take *Towne-cresses*, and hauing dried them to powder, with your hand put vp the Fundament, and then strow the powder thereon, after it lay a little hony thereon, and then strow more of the powder, mixe with the powder of *Comin*, and it helpeth. The Cure.

CHAP. 28.

Of Bots and Wormes of all sorts.

THE Bots and gnawing of Wormes is a grieuous paine, and the signes to know them is the horses oft beating his belly, and tumbling, and wallowing on the ground, with much desire to lie on his backe. The cure is, take the leaues chopt of the hearbe *Sauen*, and mixe it with hony and butter, and making two or three bals thereof, make the horse swallow them downe, and it wil helpe him. The Cure.

CHAP. 29.

Of the paine in the Kidnies, paine-pisse, or the stone.

ALL these diseases spring from one ground, which is onely grauell and hard matter gathered together in the Kidnyes, and so stopping the conduits of Vrine: the signes are onely that the horse wil oft straine to pisse, but cannot. The cure is, to take a handfull of *Mayden-haire*, and steepe it all night in a quart of strong Ale, and giue it the horse to drinke euery morning till he be wel: this will breake any stone whatsoeuer in a horse. The Cure.

CHAP. 30.

Of the Strangullion.

THis is a sorenesse in the horses yard, and a hot burning smarting when he pisseth: the signes are, hee will

The Cure:

will pisse oft, yet but a drop or two at once. The cure is, to boile in the water which hee drinketh, good store of the hearbe *Mayth*, or *Hogs-fennell*, and it will cure him.

CHAP. 31.

Of pissing blood.

The Cure:

THis commeth with ouer trauailing a horse, or tra-
uelling a horse sore in the winter when hee goeth to
grasse. The cure is, take *Aristolochia longa*, a handfull,
and boyle it in a quart of Ale, and giue it the horse to
drinke luke-warme, and giue him also rest.

CHAP. 32.

*Of the Colt-cuill, mattering of the yard, falling
of the yard, shedding the Seede.*

The cure.

All these euils proceede from much lust in a horse:
and the cure is, the powder of the hearbe *Auit*, and
the leaues of *Bittony*; stampe them with white wine, to a
moyst salve, and annoynt the sore therewith, and it will
heale all imperfection in the yard: but if the horse shed
his seede, then beate venice Turpentine and Sugar to-
gether, and giue him euery morning a good round
ball thereof, vntill the fluxe stay.

CHAP. 33.

*Of the particular diseases in Mares, barrennes, consump-
tion, rage of loue, casting foales, hardnesse to saale, and
how to make a mare cast the Foale.*

IF you haue your Mare barren, let good store of the
hearbe *agnus castus* be boyled in the water she drin-
keth. If you would haue her fruitfull, then boile good
store of *Mother-wort* in the water which she drinketh. If
she lose her belly, which sheweth a consumption of the
wombe,

wombe, you shal then giue her a quart of Brine to drink, *Mug wort* being boyled therein. If your Mare through pride of keeping grow into too extreame lust, so that she will neglect her food, through the violence of her fleshly appetite, as it is often scene amongst them, you shall houle her for two or three dayes, and giue her euery morning a ball of butter and *agnus castus* chopt together. If you would haue your Mare to cast a foale, take a handfull of *Dettony*, and boyle it in a quart of Ale, and it will deliuer her presently. If she cannot foale, take the hearbe *Horse-mint*, and cyther dry it or stampe it, and take the powder or the iuyce, and mixe it with strong Ale, and giue it the Mare, and it will helpe her. If your Mare from former brusings or stroakes be apt to cast her foales, as many are, you shall keepe her at grasse very warme, and once in a weeke giue her a good warme mash of drinke: this secretly knitteth beyond expectation.

CHAP. 34.

Of drinking venome, as horse-leaches, Hens-dung, or such like.

IF your horse haue drunke Horse-leaches, hens dung, feathers, or such like venomous thing, which you shall know by his panting, swelling, or scouring, you shall take the hearbe *Sow-thistle*, and drying it, beate it into powder, and put three spoonfulls thereof into a quart of Ale, and giue it the horse to drinke.

CHAP. 35.

Of Suppositaries, Glisters, and Purgations.

IF your horse by sicknesse, strict dyet, or too vehement trauaile, grow dry & costiuie in his body, as it is ordinary, the easiest meanes in extremity to help him, is to giue him

Pepper one pennyworth, of Swines grease one Spoonfull, the iuyce of a handfull of *Rew*, Vinegar two Spoonfulls, mixe them together, and then put it equally into both the horses eares, and then tye them vp with two flax laces, then shake the eares that the medicine may goe downe, which done, let the horse blood in the necke, and in the temple veines, and it is a certaine cure.

CHAP. 40.

Of the Strangle, or any Bile, Botch, or other impostume whatsoeuer.

ALL these diseases are of one nature, being onely hard Biles or impostumes gathered together by euill humours, either betweene the chaps, or elsewhere on the body. The cure is, take *Southernwood*, and drye it to powder, and with *Barley meale*, and the yolke of an Egge make it into a salve, and lay it to the Impostume, and it will ripen it, breake it, and heale it.

The Cure.

CHAP. 41.

Of the Canker in the Nose, or any other part of the body.

TO heale any Canker in what part soeuer it be: take the iuyce of *Plantaine*, as much *Vinegar*, & the same weight of the powder of *Allom*, and with it annoynt the sore twice or thrice a day, and it wil kill it, and cure it.

The Cure.

CHAP. 42.

Of stanching of blood, whether it be at the nose, or proceede from any wound.

IF your horse bleed violently at the nose, and wil not be stayed, then you shall take *Betsony*, and stampe it in a mortar with *Bay salt*, or other white Salt, & stop it into the horses nose, or apply it to the wound, & it wil stanch

it:

it: but if you be suddenly taken, as riding by the high way or otherwise, and cannot get this hearbe, you shall then take any woollen cloth, or any felt Hay, and with a knife scrape a fine Lint from it, and apply it to the bleeding place, and it will staunch it presently.

CHAP. 43.

Of the diseases in the mouth, as bloody rifts, Iigs, Lampas, Camery, inflammation, tongue-hurt, or the Barbs.

IF you find any infirmity in your horses mouth, as the bloody Rifts, which are chaps or rifts in the palate of the Horses mouth; the Iigs, which are little pustels or bladders within the horses lips: the Lampasse, which is an excreffion of flesh about the teeth: the Camery, which is little warts in the rooffe of the mouth: Inflammation, which is Blisters: Barbs, which are two little paps vnder the tongue, or any hurt on the tongue by Bit or otherwise: you shall take the leaues of *Wormewood*, and the leaues of *Shirmit*, and beat them in a mortar with a little Honey, and with it annoint the sores, and it will heale them, as for the Lampasse they must bee burnt away, which the ignorantest Smith can easily doe.

The Cure.

CHAP. 44.

Of paine in the teeth, or loose teeth.

FOR any paine in the teeth, take *Betony*, and seeth it in Ale or vinegar till a halfe part be consumed, and wash all the gums therewith: but if they be loose, then onely rub them with the leaues of *Elicampne* or *Horsehelme*, after they haue beene let blood, and it will fasten them.

CHAP. 45.

Of the Cricke in the necke.

FOR the Cricke in the necke, you shall first chafe it with the Friction before specified, and then annoynte and bath.

bath it with Sope and vinegar, boyled together.

CHAP. 46.

*Of the falling of the Crest, mangines in the Maine,
or shedding of the haire.*

ALl these diseases proceede from poverty, milke, or ouer-riding, and the best cure of the falling of the Crest, is blood-letting, and prouid keeping, with store of meate, for strength and fatnesse euer will rayse vp the Crest, but if the maine be mangy, you shall annoynt it with Butter and Brimstone, and if the haire fall away, then take *Southernwood*, and burne it to ashes, then take thole ashes, and mixing them with common oyle, annoynt the place therewith, and it will bring haire presently, smooth, thicke, and faire.

CHAP. 47.

Of paine in the withers.

AHorses withers are subiect to many griefes and swellings, which proceed from cold humors, sometimes from euill saddles, therefore if at any time you see any swelling about them, you shall take the hearbe *Hearts-tongue*, and boile it with the oyle of *Roses*, and very hote apply it to the sore, and it will asswage it, or else breake it and heale it.

CHAP. 48.

Of swaying the Backe, or weaknesse in the Backe.

THese two infirmities are dangerous, and may be cured, but neuer absolutely cured, therefore where you find them, take *Colmorts* and boyle them in oyle, and mixing them in a little Beane-meale charge the Backe, and it will strengthen it.

CHAP. 49.

Of the Itch in the taile, or of the generall Scab and mangiuesse, or of the Farcie.

FOR any of these diseases, take fresh grease, and yelow *Aspicke*, mixe them together, and where the Mangiuesse or Itch is, there rub it hard in, the sore being made raw: but if it be for Farcie, then with a knife slit all the knots, both hard and soft, and then rub in the medicine: which done, tie vp the Horse, so as hee may not come to bite himselfe, and then after he hath stood two or three houres, take old pisse and salt boyled together, and with it wash away the oyntment, and then put the Horse to meate; doe thus two or three daies together, provided allwaies that you first let him bloud, and take good store from him, and also giue him euery morning a strong scouring, or a strong purge, both which are shewed before.

CHAP. 50.

Of any Halting which commeth by straine, or stroke, either before or behinde, from the shoulder or hippe, downe to the Hoofe.

THERE be many infirmities which make a Horse halt, as pinching the shoulder, wrench in the shoulder, wrench in the neather ioynt, splatting the shoulder, shoulder pight, straines in ioynts, & such like: all which, since they happen by one accident, as namely, by the violence of some slip or straine, they may be cured by one medicine, & it is thus. After you haue found where the grieve is, as you may doe by griping and pinching euery severall member, then where he most complaineth, there is his most grieve. You shall take (if the straine be new) Vinegar, *Bolearmenake*, the whites of Egges and beanc-flower,

flower, and hauing beaten them to a perfect salve, lay them very hot to the sore place, and it will cure it: but if the straine be old, then take vinegar and butter, and melting them together with wheat bran, make it into a pulvis, and lay it to the sore as hot as may be, and it will without doubt, take away the griefe.

CHAP. 51.

Of foundring in the feete.

OF Foundring there be two sorts, a dry and a wet: the dry Foundring is incurable, the wet is thus to be helpt. First pare all the soales of his feet so thin, that you may see the quicke, then let him bleed at euery toe, and let them bleede wel, then stop the veine with *Tallow* and *Rosen*, and hauing tacked hollow shooes on his feete, stop them with *Branne*, *Tarre*, and *Tallow*, as boyling hot as may be, and renew it once in two daies, for a weeke together, then exercise him much, and his feete will come to their true vse and nimblenesse.

The Cure.

CHAP. 52.

Of the Splent, Curbe, Bone-spauen, or any knoble or bony excreffion, or ring bone.

A Splent is a bony excreffion vnder the knee or the fore legge, the Curbe is the like behind the hinder hough, the Spauin is the like on the inside of the hinder hough, and the Ringbone is the like on the croner of the hoofe. And the cure is, first vpon the top of the excreffion, make a slit with your knife the length of a Barley-corne, or a little more, and then with a fine corner, raise the skinn from the bone, and hauing made it hollow the compasse of the excreffion and no more, take a little line and dip it into the oyle of *Origanium*, and thrust it into the

The Cure.

the hole and couer the knob, and so let it bried till you see it rot, and that Nature casteth out both the medicine and the core. As for the Ring-bone you shal need to scarifie and annoynt it with the oyle onely.

CHAP. 53.

Of the Mallander, Selander, Paines, Scratches, mellecs, mules, crowne-scabs, and such like.

FOr any of these Sorrances, you shall take verdigrease, and soft grease, and grinding them together, to an oyntment, put it in a boxe by it selfe: then take Waxe, Hogges-grease, and Turpentine, of each alike, and being melted together, put that salve into another boxe: then when you come to dresse the sore, after you haue taken off the scab and made it raw, you shall annoynte it with your greene salve of *Verdigrease* and fresh grease onely for two or three dayes; it is a sharpe salve, and will kill the cankerous humour; then when you see the sore looke faire, you shal take two parts of the yellow salve, and one part of the greene salve, and mixing them together, annoynt the sore therewith til it be whole, making it stronger or weaker as you shal find occasion.

CHAP. 54.

Of an upper Attaint, or nether Attaint, or any hurt by ouer-reaching.

THese Attaints are stioakes or cuts by ouer-reaching, eyther on the backe sinew of the fore-legge, on the heeles or nether ioynnts, and may be safely healed by the same former medicine & meane which healeth the *Mallander*, or *Selander*, in the former Chapter, onely for your ouer-reaches, you shal before you apply your salve lay the sore plaine and open, without hollownesse, and

H

wash

wash it with beere and salt, or vinegar and Salt.

CHAP. 55.

Of the infirmities of hooves, as false quarters, loose hooves, casting hooves, hoove-bound, hoove-running, hoove-brittle, hoove-hurt, hoove-soft, hoove-hard, or generally to preserve hooves.

THe hoove is subiect to many miseries: as first to false quarters, which cometh by pricking, and must be helpt by good shooing, where the shooe must beare on euery part of the foot but vpon the false quarters onely. If the hoove be loose, annoint it with pitch of *Burgundy*, and it wil knit it: if it be cleane cast off, then pitch of *burgundy* and tallow molten together, wil bring a new: if it be bound or straitned, it must be very well opened at the heeles, the soale kept moyst, and the cronet annoynted with the fat of Bacon and *Tarre*. If the frush of the feete runne with stinking matter, it must be stoppt with Soote, Turpentine, and *Bolearmoniacke* mixt together: if it be brittle or broken, then annoynt it with pitch and Linseede oyle, molten to a soft salve: if it be soft, then stop it with Sope, and the ashes of a burnt Felt mixt together: if the hooves be hard, lay hote burning Cinders vpon them, and then stop them with tow and tallow: and generally for the preserving of all good hooves, annoynt them daily with the sward or rinde of fat Bacon.

CHAP. 56.

Of the blood spauen, or hough bony, or any other unnatural swelling, from what cause soeuer it proceedeth.

THese two sorrhances are pustels, or soft round swellings, the first on the inside of the hinder hough, and the other on the very huckle of the hough behind, they are

are soft and very sore, and the cure is : First to take vp The Cure.
 the veine aboue, and let it bleed onely from below, then
 hauing knit it fast with two shooc-makers ends on both
 sides the slit, cut the veine in two peeces : then take Lin-
 seede, and bruisse it in a mortar, then mixe it with Cow-
 dung, and heate it in a frying pan, and so apply it to the
 swelling only, and if it breake and run, then heale it with
 a playster of pitch, and the horse shall neuer be troubled
 with *Spauen* more : but if the swelling come by strayne
 or bruisse, then take patch-grease, and melting it, annoint
 the sore therewith, holding a hote yron neere it to sinke
 in the grease, then fold a linnen cloath about it, and it
 will asswage all swellings whatsoeuer.

CHAP. 57.

Of winde-Galles.

THese are little blebs or soft swellings on each side
 the Fetlocke, procured by much trauaile on hard
 and stony wayes. The cure is to pricke them, and to
 let out the ielly, and then drye vp the sore with a play- The Cure.
 ster of Pitch.

CHAP. 58.

Of Enterfayring or Shackle-gall, or any gallings.

ENterfayring is hewing one leg on another, and stri-
 king off the skinne: it proceedeth from weaknesse or
 straightnes of the horses pace, and Shackell-gall is any
 gall vnderneath the Fetlocke. The cure is, to annoynt The Cure.
 them with Turpentine and verdigrease mixt together, or
 Turpentine alone, if it rankle not too much.

CHAP. 59.

Haws on the Cronet, as the quitterbone or Matlong.

THe Quitterbone is a hollow vicer on the top of the
 Cronet, and so is the Matlong, and the cure is : First

The Cure.

to taint it with Verdigrease vntil you haue eaten out the core, and made the wound very cleane: then you shal heale it vp with the same salues, that you heale the Scratches.

CHAP. 60.

Of wounds in the foote, as grauelling, pricking, figge, retait, or cloying.

IF your horse haue any wound in his foote, by what mischance soeuer, you shal first search it, and see that it bee cleare of any nayle poynt, or other splent to annoy it, then wash it very wel with white Wine and Salt, and after taint it with the oyntment called *Egyptiacum*, and then lay hote vpon the taint, with *Flaxe* hurds, *Turpentine*, *Oyle*, and *Waxe* mingled together, and annoynt al the top of the hoofe and cronet with *Bollearmoniake* and Vinegar: doe thus once a day vntil the fore be whole.

CHAP. 61.

To draw out a Stab or Thorne.

TAKE the hearbe *Detany*, and bruisse it in a mortar with blacke sope, and lay it to the sore, and it wil draw out the splent, iron, thorne, or stub.

CHAP. 62.

Of the Aubury or Tetter.

The Cure

THE Aubury is a bloody wart on any part of the horses body, and the Tetter is a cankerous vlcer like it: The cure of both is with an hote yron to seare the one plaine to the body, and to scarifie the other; then take the iuyce of *Plantaine*, and mixe it with vinegar, Hony, and the powder of *Alloes*, and with it annoynt the sore til it be whole.

CHAP.

CHAP. 63.

Of the Cords or ſtring-halt.

THis is an vnaturall binding of the ſinewes, which imperfection, a horſe bringeth into the World with him: and therefore it is certayne it is incurable, and not painefull, but onely an eye-ſore, yet the beſt way to keepe it from worle inconuenience, is to bathe his limbs in the decoction of *Coleworts*.

CHAP. 64.

Of Spur-galling, or fretting the ſkinne and haire.

FOR this, there is nothing better then Piſſe and Salt, with which waſh the ſore daily.

CHAP. 65.

Of healing any old ſore or Wound.

FReſh Butter, and the hearbe *Ameos* chopt and beaten together to a ſalue will heale any wound, or any old ſore.

CHAP. 66.

Of ſinewes being cut.

IF the Horſes ſinewes be cut, take the leaues of wilde *Nepe* or *Woodbine*, and beating them in a mortar with *May* butter, apply it to the ſore, and it will knit the ſinewes.

CHAP. 67.

Of eating away dead Fleſh.

TAke *Stubwort*, and lap it in a red *Docke* leafe, and roſt it in the hot cinders, and lay it to the ſore, and it will eate away any dead fleſh. So will *Verdigrease*, burnt *Allome*, or *Lime*.

The Cure.

CHAP. 68.

Of Knots in the ioynts.

Patch-grease applied as is before shewed for swellings, will take away any hard knots in the flesh, or vpon the sinewes.

CHAP. 69.

Of venemous wounds, as biting with a mad dog, tuskes of Bores, Serpents, or such like.

FOr any of these mortall or venemous wounds, take Yarrow, Calamint, and the graines of wheat, and beat them in a mortar with water of Southernwood, and make it into a salue, and lay it to the sore, and it will heale it safely.

CHAP. 70.

Of Lice, or Nits.

The Cure.

THis filthinesse of Vermine is bred in a horse through vnnaturall dislike and pouerty: The cure is, take the iuyce of Beets and Stauesaker beaten together, and with it annoynt the horses body ouer, and it will make him cleane.

CHAP. 71.

Of defending a horse from flies.

Take the iuyce of Pellitory of Spaine, and mixing it with milke, annoynt the horses belly therewith, and no flies will trouble him.

CHAP. 72

Of broken bones, or bones out of ioynt.

After you haue placed the bones in their true places; take the Ferre-of-mund, and beat it in a mortar with the oyle of Swallowes, and annoint all the member, then splent it and role it vp, and in fiftene dayes, the bones will knit and be strong.

CHAP.

CHAP. 73.

Of drying up sores when they be almost whole.

A Llome burnt, vntleekt Lime, the ashes of an elde shoe-sole burnt, or Oyfter-shells burnt, any of these simply by themselves, will dry vp any sore, though neuer to moyst.

CHAP. 74.

A most famous Reccite to make a Horse that is leane, and full of inward sicknesse, sound and fat in foureteene dayes, hauing bin often approued of.

TAke of wheate-meale fixe pound, Anniseedes two ounces, Commin-seedes fixe drammes, Carthamus one dramme and a halfe, Fennegreeke-seeds one ounce two drammes, Brimstone one ounce and a halfe, Sallet oyle one pinte, Honey one pound and a halfe, white Wine foure pints: this must bee made into paste, the hard simples beeing pounded into powder, and finely searst, and then kneaded together, and so made into bals as bigge as a mans fist, then euery watering consume one of those bays into his colde water, which he drinketh for morning and euening for fifteene dayes together, and if at the first hee bee dainty to drinke the Water, yet care not, but let him fast till he drinke it, and after he beginnes to take it, hee will drinke it with great greedinesse.

CHAP. 75.

How to make a white Starre.

SLit the horses fore-head the length of your Starre, and then rayse the skinne vp with a corner, and put in a plate of Leade as bigge as the Starre, and let it remaine so two or three daies together, and then let it out and presse downe the skin with your hand, and that haire

will fall away, and white wil come in the place : or to scald the face or skinne with a sower apple rosted, will bring white haire : But to make a blacke starre, or a red starre in a Horses fore-head, I referre it for you to looke and approoue of in my *Master peece*, which belongeth onely to that for to be so exactly discoursed of, this being onely a generall Cure of all Cattle.

The end of the Horse.



The generall Cure and ordering of the Bull, Cow, Calfe, or Oxe

CHAP. I.

Of the Bull, Cow, Calfe or Oxe, their shape, breed, use, choise, and preservation.



Or as much the Male of all Creatures are the principall in the breede and generation of things, and that the fruite which issueth from their *Seed*, participateth most with their outward shapes, and inward qualities, I thinke fittest in this place, where I intend to treat of Horned-cattle and Neate, to speake first of the choyle of a faire Bull, being the breeders principallest instrument of profit. You shall vnderstand then, that of our English cattel (for I will not speake of those in *Italy*, and other forreigne Countries, as other Authors do, and forget mine owne) the best are bred in *Torke-shire, Darby-shire, Lancashire, Stafford-shire, Lincolne-shire, Gloucester-shire*, and *Somerset-shire*, though they which are bred in *Torke-shire, Darby-shire, Lancashire*, and *Stafford-shire*, are generally all blacke of colour, and though

The Countie
for breed.

though they whose blacknesse is purest, and their haire like veluet, are esteemed best; they haue exceeding large hornes, and very white, with blacke tippes; they are of stately shape, bigge, round, and well buckled together in euery member, short ioyned, and most comely to the eye, so that they are esteemed excellen in the market: those in *Lincoln-shire* are the most part Pide with more white, then the other colours, their hornes little and crooked; of bodies exceeding tall, long and large, leane and thin thighed, strong hooued, not apt to sur bait, and are indeede fittest for labour and daught. Those in *Somerset-shire* and *Glocester shire*, are generally of a blood red colour, in a l shapes like vnto those in *Lincoln shire*, and fittest for their vses. Now to mixe a race of these and the blacke ones together is not good, for their shapes and colours are so contrary, that their issue are very vncomely: therefore I wou d wish all men to make their breeds eyther simply from one and the same kind, or else to mixe *Yorke-shire* with *Stafford shire*, with *Lancashire*, or *Darby shire* with one of the blacke races, and so likewise *Lincolne-shire* with *Somerset-shire*, or *Somerset-shire* with *Glocester shire*.

Now for the shape of your Bull; hee would be of a sharpe and quicke countenance, his hornes the larger the better, his necke fleshy, his belly long and large, his forehead broad and curled, his eies blacke & large, his eares rough within, and haire like veluet, his muzel large and broad at the vpper lip, but narrow and small at the nether, his nostril crooked within, yet wide and open, his dew-lap extending from his nether lip down to his fore-boothes, large, side, thinne and hairy, his breast rough and bigge, his shou ders large, broad and deepe, his ribs broad and wide, his backe straight and flat, euen to the setting

The shape of the Bull.

The vse of the
Bull.

setting on of his tayle, which wou'd stand high, his huckle bones round and faire appearing, making his buttockes square, his thighs round, his legs straight & short ioyned; his knees round and big, his hoones or claws long and hollow, his tayle long and bush-haired, and his pyzell round, & also well haired. These Bulls as they are for breed, so they are excellently good for the draught, onely they naturally draw better single, like horses, then in the yoake, like Oxen: the reason as I suppose being, because they can hardly be match't in an equall manner.

Of the Cow,
& her shape.

Now for the Cow, you shall chuse her of the same Court, y with your Bull, and as neare as may be of one colour, onely her bagge or vdder wou'd euer be white, with foure teates and no more, her belly would be round and large, her forehead broad and smooth, and all her other parts such as are before shewed in the male kinde.

Of her vse.

The vse of the Cow is two-fold, either for the Darie, or for breed: The red Cow giueth the best milke, and the black Cow bringeth forth the goodliest Calfe. The yong Cow is the best for breed, yet the indifferent old are not to be refused. That Cow which giueth milke longest is best for both purposes, for she which goes long drie loseth halfe her profit, and is lesse fit for teeming: for commonly they are subiect to feede, and that strayneth the wombe or matrix.

Of Calues,
and their
nourishing.

Now for Calues: there are two ways of breeding them: the one to let them runne with their Dams al the yee e, which is best, & maketh the goodliest beast: the other, to take them from their Dams, after their first sucking, and so bring them vp on the finger, with flotten milke, the colde onely being taken away and no more; for to giue a yong Calfe hot milke is present death, or very dangerous. If your Calfe be calued in the five dayes after

Observations.

the

the change, which is called the *Prime*, doe not reare it, for most assuredly it will haue the Sturdy, therefore preserve it onely for the butcher; also when you haue preserved those male Calues, which shall be Bulls, then geld the rest for Oxen, and the younger they are get the better. The best time for rearing of Calues, is from *Michaëlmas* till *Candlemas*. A Calfe would be nourished with Milk twelue weekes, onely a fortnight before you weane it from Milke, let the Milke be mixt with water. After your Calfe hath drunke one moneth: you shall take the finest, sweetest, and softest Hay you can get, and putting little wilpes into clouen stickes, place them so as the Calfe may come to them and learne to eat Hay. After our *Ladies-day*, when the weather is faire, you may turne your Calues to grasse, but by no meanes let it be ranke, but short and sweet, so that they may get it with some labour.

Now of the Oxe: You shall vnderstand that the largest are the best and most profitable, both for draught or feeding: for he is the strongest to indure labour, and best able to containe both flesh and tallow. Now for his shape, it differeth nothing from that of the Bull, only his face would be smooth, and his belly deeper. That Oxe is fittest for the yoake, which is of gentlest nature, and most familiar with the man. In matching your Oxen for the yoake, let them as neare as may be, be of one height, spirit, and strength, for the stronger will euer wrong the weaker, and the duller will iniure him that is of free spirit, except the driuer be carefull to keep the dull Oxe to his labour. Oxen for the yoake, would by no meanes be put beyond their ordinary pace: for violence in trauaile heates them, heat breeds surfeit, and surfeit those diseases which makes them vnapt to feed, or for any other vſe of goodnesse.

Of the Oxe,
and his vſe.

if his food for
labour.

goodnesse. Your Oxe for the yoake will labour well with Barly-straw, or Pease-straw, and for blend fodder which is Hay and straw mixed together, he will desire no better feeding.

Oxe to feed
for the But-
cher

Now for your Oxe to feede, hee would as much as might be, be euer of lusty and yong yeeres, or if old yet healthfull & vnbruised, which you shall know by a good taile, and a good pyzell, for if the haire of one or both be lost, then he is a watter & he will be long in feeding. If you doe see the Oxe doth licke himselfe all ouer, it is a good signe that he is market-able and will feede, for it shewes soundnesse, & that the beast taketh a ioy in himselfe: yet whilst he doth so lick himselfe he feedeth not, for his owne pride hindreth him, and therefore the husband man will lay the Oxes owne dung vpon his hide, which will make him leaue licking & fall to his foode. Now if you goe to chuse a fat beast, you shall handle his hindmost ribbe, & if it be soft & loose, like Downe, then it shews the Oxe is outwardly well fed; so doth soft huckell bones, & a bigge nach, round & knotty: if his cod be big & full, it shewes he is well tallowed, and so doth the croppe behinde the shoulders: If it be a Cow, then handle her nauell, and if that be big, round, & soft, surely she is well tallowed. Many other obseruations there are, but they be so well knowne, and common in euery mans vse, that they need no curious demonstration.

To preserve
Cattell in
health.

Now for the preseruatiou of these cattell in good and perfect health. It shall be meete that for the young and lusty, and indeede generally for all sorts, except Calues, to let them bloud twice in the yeere, namely the Spring and fall, the Moone being in any of the lower Signes, and also to giue them to drinke of the pickle of Olives mixed with a head of garlicke bruised therein. And

for

for your Calues, be onely careful that they goe not too soone to grasse, and smal danger is to be feared. Now notwithstanding all a mans carefulnes, beasts daily doe get infirmities, and often fall into mortall extremities, peruse therefore these Chapters following, and you shall finde cure for euery particuler disease.

CHAP. 2.

Of the Feauer in Cattell.

CAttell are most subiect vnto a Feauer, & it commeth either from surfet of foode, being raw, and musty, or from fluxe of cold humors ingendred by cold keeping. The signes are trembling, heauie eyes, a foaming mouth, and much groaning: & the cure is; first, you shall The Cure; let him bloud, and then giue him to drinke a quart of ale, in which is boiled three or foure roots of *Plantaine*, and two spoonetuls of the best *London-Treacle*, and let his Hay be sprinkled with water.

CHAP. 3.

Of any inward sicknesse in Cattell.

FOR any inward sicknesse or drooping in Cattell, take a quart of strong Ale, and boile it with a handfull of *Wormewood*, and halfe a handfull of *Rewe*; then straine it, and adde to it two spoonfuls of the iuyce of *Garlicke*, and as much of the iuyce of *Honseleeke*, & as much *London-Treacle*, and giue it the beast to drinke, being no more but lukewarme.

CHAP. 4.

Of the diseases in the head, as the Sturdy, or turning-enill.

THis disease of the Sturdy is knowne by a continuall turning a bout of the beast in one place; and the cure The Cure; is, to cast the Beast, and hauing made his feet fast, to slit the vpper part of his forehead crosse-wise, about foure inches

inches each way, then turning vp the skinne and laying the skull bare, cut a peece out of the skull two inches square or more: then looke, and next vnto the panicle of the braine, you shall see a bladder lye full of water and blood, which you shall very gently take out, and throw away, then annoynt the place with warme fresh Butter, turne downe the skinne, and with a needle and a little red silke stitch it close together, then lay on a hot playster of oyle, Turpentine, Waxe, and a little Rozen melted together with Flaxe hurds, and so folding warme woollen cloathes about the head, let the Beast rise, and so remaine three or foure dayes ere you dresse it againe, and then heale it vp like another wound, onely obserue in this cure, by no meanes you touch the braine, for that is mortall, and then the helpe is both common and most easie.

CHAP. 5.

Of diseases in the eyes of Cattell, as the Haw, a stroake, inflammation, weeping, or the Pin or webbe.

FOr any generall sorenesse in the eyes of Cattle, take the Water of *Eye bright*, mixt with the iuyce of *Houfelecke*, and wash them therewith, and it will recover them: but if a Hawe breede therein, then you shall cut it out, which euery simple Smith can do. But for a stroake, inflammation, Pinne or web, which breedes excreffions vpon the eyes: take a new layd Egge, and put out halfe the white, then fill it vp with Salt, and a little Ginger, and roste it extreame hard in hote cinders: which done, beate it to powder shell and all; but before you roste it, wrap it in a wet cloath, and put of this powder into the beasts eye, and it will heale and cure it.

CHAP.

CHAP. 6.

Of diseases in the mouth, as barbs vnder the tongue, blaine on the tongue, teeth loose, or tongue venomd.

THese Barbs or Paps which grow vnder the tongues of Cattle, and being inflamed doe hinder them from feeding, you shall with a keene paire of sheares cut away close by the flesh, and if they bleed much (as they will do if they be rancke) you shall then with a red hot bodkin seare them, and drop on the top of the seared places a drop or two of Rozen and Butter mixt together; but if they bleede not, then onely rub them with Sage and Salt, and they will heale. Now for the blaine on the tongue, of some called the tin-blaine, it is a blister which groweth at the rootes of the tongue, and cometh through heat of the stomacke and much chafing, and is oft very mortall, for it will rise so suddenly and so big, that it will stop the winde of the Beast. The cure The Cure. is, to thrust your hand into the mouth of the Beast, and drawing out his tongue, with your naile to breake the blister, and then to wash the sore place with strong brine, or Sage, Salt, and Water: if you find more blisters then one, breake them all, and wash them, and it is a present cure. Now for loose teeth, you shall let the beast blood in his gums, and vnder his tayle, then wash his chaps with Sage and Woodbine leaues, boyld in Brine: Lastly, if the tongue be venomd, which you shall know by the vnnaturall swelling thereof: you shall take Plantaine, and boiling it with Vinegar and Salt, wash the tongue therewith, and it will cure it.

CHAP. 7.

Of diseases in the necke as being galled, bruised, swolne, out of ioynt, or hauing the Closshe.

IF any Oxes necke be galled, bruised, or swollen with the

the yooke, take the leaues of round *Aristolochia*, and beating them in a Morter, with tallow, or t. esh grease, annoynte the sore place therewith, and it will not onely heale it, but any strayne in the necke, euen if the bone be a little disordered. Now for the *Closhe* or *Clowse*, which cauleth a beast to pil and loose the haire from his necke, and is bred by drawing in wet and rainy weather: you shal take the ashes of an old burnt shooc, and strew it vpon the necke, and then rub it ouer with Tallow and Turpentine mixt together.

CHAP. 8.

Of the Pestilence, Gargill, or Murraine in Beasts.

THis Pestilence or Murraine amongst Beasts is bred by diuers occasions; as from rankenesse of blood, or feeding; from corruption of the ayre, intemperatenesse of the weather, inundation of floods, or the infection of other Cattell: much might be sayd of the violence and mortality thereof, which hath vtterly vnturnished whole Countries: but to goe to the cure, you shal giue to al your Cattell, as wel the sound as sicke, this medicine, which neuer failed to preserue as many as haue taken it: Take of old vrine a quart, and mixe it with a handful of Hens dung, dissoiued therein, and let your Beast drink it.

CHAP. 9.

Of the milking, or leanness of Beasts.

IF your Beast fal into any vnnatural millike or leanness, which you shal know by the discolouring of his haire: you shal then cause him first to be let blood, and after take sweet Butter and beat it in a mortar, with a little Myrrhe, and the shauing of Iuory, and being kept fasting, make him to swallow downe two or three bals thereof: and if it be in the winter, feede him with sweet Hay, if in the Summer, put him to grasse.

CHAP.

CHAP. 10.

*Of the disease in the Guts, as fluxe, costuenesse,
Cholicke, and such like.*

IF your Beast be troubled with any fore laxe, or bloody-fluxe, you shall take a handful of the seeds of wood-rose, and being dried and beaten to powder, brew it with a quart of strong Ale, and giue it the beast to drink. But if hee be too drye or costiuie in his body, then you shall take a handfull of *Pennegreeke*, and boyle it in a quart of Ale, and giue it him to drinke, but for any chollicke or belly-ake, or gnawing of the guts, boyle in the water which he drinketh good store of oyle, and it will helpe him.

CHAP. 11.

Of pissing of Blood.

IF your Beast pisse blood, which commeth eyther of ouer-labouring, or of hard and sower feeding, you shall take *Shepherds purse*, and boile it in a quart of red Wine, and then straine it, and put to it a little *Cynamon*, and so giue it the Beast to drinke.

CHAP. 12.

Of dropping nostrils, or any cold in the head.

IF your Beasts nostrils run continually, which is a signe of cold in the head; you shall take *Butter* and *Brimstone*, and mixing them together, annoyat two goose-feathers therewith, and thrust them vp into the nostrils of the beast: and vse thus to do euery morning till they leaue dropping.

CHAP. 13.

Of any swelling in a beast whatsoeuer.

IF your Beast haue any outward swelling, barbe it with oyle and vinegar exceeding hot, and it will assuage it:
I but

but if the swelling be inward, then boyle round *Aristolochia* in his water.

CHAP. 14.

Of the worme in the tayle.

THere is a worme which will breede in the tayle of a beast, and doeth not onely keepe him from feeding, but also eateth away the haire of the taile, and disfigureth the beast. The cure is, to wash the taile in strong lye made of vrine and *Ash-wood ashes*, and that will kill the worme, and also heale and dry vp the sore.

The cure.

CHAP. 15.

Of any cough, or shortnesse of breath in Cattle.

IF your beast bee troubled with the cough or shortnesse of breath, you shal giue him to drinke diuers mornings together a spoonfull or two of *Tarre* dissolved in a quart of new milke, and a head of *Garlicke* cleane pild and bruised.

CHAP. 16.

Of any impostume, bile, or botch in a beast.

IF your beast be troubled with any impostume, bile, or botch, you shall take *Lilly rootes*, and boyle them in milke till they be soft, so that you may make them like pap, then being very hote clap it to the soare, and then when it comes to be soft, open it with a hote iron, and let out the filth, then heale it vp with *Tarre*, *Turpentine*, and oyle mixt together.

CHAP. 27.

Of diseases in the sinewes, as weaknesse, stifnesse, or sorenesse.

IF you finde by the vnnimble going of your beast, that his sinewes are weake, shrunk or tender: Take *Malloes* and *Checkweed*, and boyle them in the dregs of ale or in vinegar, and being very hote, lay it to the offended member,

member, and it will comfort the sinewes.

CHAP. 18.

*Of the generall scab, particular scab, itch, or
scurfe in Cattle.*

IF your beaſt be troubled with ſome few ſcabs heere
and there on his body, you ſhall onely rub them
off, and annoynt the place with blacke Sope and Tar
mixt together, and it will heale them. But if the ſcab
be vniuerſall ouer the body, and the ſcabs mixt with a
drye ſcurfe, then you ſhall firſt let the beaſt bleed, after
rub off the ſcabs and ſcurfe till the ſkin bleed, then waſh
it with olde vrine and Greene Copporas together, and
after the bathing is drye, annoynt the body with Bores
greafe and Brimſtone mingled together.

CHAP. 19.

Of the hide-bound, or drye ſkinne in Cattle.

THIS griefe commeth of ouer much labour and euill
keeping, and aboue all other beaſts your *Lincolne-*
ſhire Oxen are ſubiect vnto it, the ſignes are a diſcolou- The Cure.
red and hard ſkin, with much leanneſſe: The cure is, to
let him bleed, and to giue him to drinke a quart of good
Strong Ale brewed with *Myrrhe* and the powder of *bay*
berries, or for want of *Berries* the Bay-tree leaues, and
then keepe him warme and feede him with Hay that is
a little Mow-burnt, and onely looketh red, but is not
duſty or mouldy, for that will get him an appetite to
drinke, and drinking will looſen his ſkin.

CHAP. 20.

*Of the diſeaſes in the lungs, eſpecially the
lung-growne.*

THe Lungs of a beaſt are much ſubiect to ſickneſſe, as
may appeare by much panting, and ſhortneſſe of
breath, the ſignes being a continuall coughing, but that
which

which is before prescribed for the Cough, will cure all these, onely for a beast which is Lung-growne, or hath his lungs growne to his side, which cometh through some extreme drought taken in the Summer season, and is knowne by the cough, hoarse, or hollow coughing, you shall take a pint of *Tanners oze*, and mixe it with a pint of new milke, and one ounce of browne *Sugarcandy*, and giue it the Beast to drinke, this hath beene found a present cure: Or to giue him a ball as bigge as a mans fist of Tarre and Butter mixt together, is a very certayne cure.

CHAP. 21.

Of biting with a mad dog, or any other venemous beast.

IF your Beast bee bitten with a mad-dogge, or any other venemous Beast, you shall take *Plantaine*, and beate it in a mortar with *Bolearmoniacke*, *Saguis draconis*, Barley meale, and the whites of Egges, and playster wise lay it vnto the sore, renewing it once in foure-teeene houres.

CHAP. 22.

Of the falling downe of the pallate of a beasts mouth.

Labour and drought will make the pallate of a Beasts mouth to fall downe, which you shall know by a certayne hollow chanking in his mouth, when hee would eate, also by his sighing, and a desire to eate but cannot. The ordinary cure is, you shall cast the Beast, and with your hand thrust it vp, then let him blood in the pallate, and annointe it with Honey and Salt: and then put him to grasse, for hee may eate no drye meate.

The Cure.

CHAP.

CHAP. 23.

Of any grieve or paine in the hoofe of a beast,
and of the Foule.

TAke Mugwort and beate it in a mortar with hard tallow, and apply it to the hoofe of the Beast, and it will take away any grieve whatsoever. But if he be troubled with that dileale which is called the *Foule*, and cometh most commonly by treading in mans ordure, breedeth a foulenesse and swelling betweene the cleyes, you shall for the cure, cast the Beast, and with a Hay Rope rub him to hard betweene the lame, that you make him bleede, then annoynt the place with *Tarre*, *Turpentine*, and *Kitching fee*, mixt together, and keepe him out of the dirt, and he will loone be whole.

The Cure.

CHAP. 24.

Of bruising in generall, on what part of the
body soeuer they bee.

TAke *Brooklime* the lesse, and frye it with tallow, and so hote lay it to the bruise, and it will eyther expell it, or else ripen it, breake it, and heale it, as hath beene often approoued.

CHAP. 25.

Of swallowing downe Hens-dung, or any poisonous thing.

IF your beast haue swallowed downe Hens-dung, Horse-leeches, or any other poysonous thing, you shall take a pint of strong vinegar, and halfe so much oyle or sweete Butter, and two spoonefuls of *London-treacle*, and mixing them together on the fire, giue it the beast warme to drinke, and it will cure him.

CHAP. 26.

Of killing Lice or ticks.

BEASTS that are bred in Woods vnder droppings of trees, or in barren and vnwholesome places are much

The Cure.

subiect to Lice, Tickes, and other vermine. The cure whereof is to annoynt their body with fresh grease, pepper, Stauesaker, and Quicksilver, beaten together vntill the Quicksilver be flaine.

CHAP. 27.

Of the Dembolne, or generall Gargill.

Howsoever some of our English Writers are opinioned, this Dembolne or general Gargill is a poysonous and violent swelling, beginning at the neather part of the Dewlap, and if it bee not prevented, the swelling wil ascend vpward to the throate of the beast, and then it is incurable: therefore for the preservation of your Beast, as soone as you see the swelling appeare, cast the Beast, and slit the swel'd place of the Dewlap at least foure inches in length: then take a handful or two of Speare-grasse or Knot-grasse, and thrusting it into the wound, stich it vp close, then annoynt it with Butter and Salt, and so let it rot and weare away of it selfe if you perceiue that his body be sweld, which is a signe that the poyson is disperst inwardly, then it shal be good to giue him a quart of Ale and Rew boyled together, and to chafe him vp and downe wel, both before and after.

CHAP. 28.

Of the losse of the Cud.

The Cure.

A Beast wil many times through carelesnesse in chewing, loose his Cud, and then mourne and leaue to eate: The certaine cure whereof is, to take a little lowre Leauen and Salt, and beating it in a mortar with mans Urine and Lome, make a pretty bigge bal, and force him to swallow it downe, and it will recover his Cudde.

CHAP. 29.

Of killing of all sorts of wormes, either in the
Oxe, Cow, or Calfe.

THere is nothing killeth wormes in the bodies of cat-
tel sooner then *Sawen* chopt smal, and beaten with
sweet butter, and so giuen in round bals to the Beast, nor
any thing maketh them voyde them so soone as sweete
Wort, and a little blacke-sepe mixt together, and giuen
the Beast to drinke.

The Cure.

CHAP. 30.

Of the vomiting of blood.

THis Disease commeth through ranknesse of blood,
got in fruitful pastures after hard keeping, insomuch
that you shall see the blood flow from their mouthes.
The cure is, first to let the beast blood, and then giue to
drinke *Bolcarmoniack* and Ale mixt together.

CHAP. 31.

Of the Gout in castell.

IF your Beast be troubled with the Gout, which you
shal know by the suddaine swelling of his ioynts, and
falling againe, you shal take *Galingall*, and boyle it in
the dregs of Ale and sweet Butter, and pulvis-wile lay it
to the offended member.

CHAP. 32.

Of milking of a Beast.

Milking, is when a beast wil oft fall, and oft rise, as
hee is at his labour, and cannot indure to stand
any while together: it proceedeth from some stroke or
bruise eyther by cudgel or other blunt weapon: And
the cure is, not to rayse him suddainly, but to giue
him Ale and some stone-pitch mixt very wel together
to drinke.

The Cure.

CHAP. 33.

Of prouoking a beast to pisse.

IF your beast cannot pisse, steepe *Smallage*, or the Rootes of *Raddish* in a quart of *Ale*, and giue it him to drinke, and it presently helpeth.

CHAP. 34.

Of the overflowing of the gall in beasts.

THe ouerflowing of the Gall, is euer knowne by the yellownesse of the skinne and the eies of the beast: And the cure is, to giue him a quart of *milke*, *Saffron*, & *turmericke*, mixt together to drinke after he hath beene let blood, and so do three mornings together.

The cure.

CHAP. 35.

Of a beast that is goared eyther with a stake, or the horne of another beast.

TAke *turpentine* and oyle, and heate them on the coales, and then taint the wound therewith, and it will heale it.

CHAP. 36.

Of a Cow that is whethered.

THis disease is when a Cow after her calving cannot cast her cleaning, and therefore to compell her to cast it, you shal take the iuyce of *Bettony*, *Mugwort*, and *Mallows*, of each three spoonefuls, and mixe it with a quart of *Ale*, and giue it the beast to drinke: and also giue her to eate scorched *Barly*, and it will force her to auoyde her burthen suddainly.

CHAP. 37.

Of drawing out thornes or stubs.

TAke blacke *Snails* and blacke *Sope*, and beate them to a salve, and apply them to the sore, and it will draw the griefe to bec apparant.

CHAP.

CHAP. 38.

Of purging of Cattell.

THere is nothing doth purge a beast so naturally, as the greene weedy grasse which groweth in orchards vnder trees; nor any medicine doeth purge them better the tarre, butter, and Sugarcandy, mixt together, and giuen in bals as big as on Hennes egge.

CHAP. 39.

Of being shrew-runne, or shrew-bitten.

A Shrew Mouse, which is a Mouse with short yneuen legges, and a long head, like a swires, is a venemous thing, and if it bite a beast, the sore wil swell and rankle, and put the beast in danger; but if it onely runne ouer a beast it feebleth his hinder parts, and maketh him vnable to goe: the cure then for being shrew-bitten, is the same which is formerly shewed for the biting of other venemous beasts: but if he be shrew-runne, you shall onely draw him vnder, or beate him with a Bramble which groweth at both ends in the Furrowes of Corne lands.

The Cure.

CHAP. 40.

Of faintnesse in labour.

IF your beast in his labour, and heat of the day, chance to faint, you shall loose him, and driue him to the running streame to drinke, and then giue him two or three Ospines full of parcht Barley to eate, and hee will labour fresh againe.

CHAP. 41.

Of breeding Milke in a Cow.

IF your Cow after her caluing cannot let downe her Milke, you shall giue her a quart of strong posset Ale mixt with Anne-seedes, and Coliander-seedes, beaten to powder, to drinke every morning, and it will not onely

onely make her milke spring, but also increase it wonderfully.

CHAP. 42.

Of bones out of ioynt, or bones broken.

IF any Beast haue a bone broken, or misplaced, after you haue set it right, and in his true place: you shal wrappe a playster about it, made of Burgandy pitch, Tallow, and Linseede oyle, and then splent it, and let it remayne vnbound fiftene dayes, and it will doe it much good.

CHAP. 43.

Of the rot in Beasts.

IF your beast bee subiect to rotnesse, which you may know by his leanness, mislike, and continuall scouring behinde: you shal take Bay-berries, beaten to powder, Myrrhe, Iuyce leanes, Elder leanes, and Frother-sewe, a good lump of drye clay, and bay salt, mixe these together in strong vrine, and being warme, giue the beast halfe a pint thereof to drinke, and it will heale and preserue them.

CHAP. 44.

Of the Pantus.

THe *Pantus* is a very faint disease, and maketh a beast to sweat, shake, and pant much. The cure is, to giue him in Ale and rye, mixt together, a little Soore, and a little earning to drinke, two or three mornings before you labour him.

The Cure.

CHAP. 45.

Of all manner of wounds in beasts.

TO cure any wounds in Beasts given by edge-tooles, or otherwise, where the skin is broke; take Hoggs-grease, Tar, Turpentine, and waxe, of each a like quantity, and a quarter so much verdigrease, and mixe them

all

all together into one salve, and apply it to the wound, by spreading it vpon a cloath, and it wil heale it without any ranke, or dead flesh.

The end of the Bull, Oxe, Cow, and Calfe.



Of Sheepe.

CHAP. I.

Of Sheepe in generall, their vse, choyse, shape, and preservation.

I do enter into any longer discourse of praise or profite of Sheepe, or to shew my Reading by relation of the Sheepe of other Countries were fruitles, because I am to Write much in a very little Paper: and I speake onely to my Countrey-men the English, who desire to learne and know their owne profite. Know then, that whosoever wil stocke himselfe with good Sheepe, must looke into the nature of the soyle in which hee liueth: For Sheepe according to the Earth and Ayre in which they liue, do alter their natures and properties: the barren Sheepe becoming good, in good soyles, and the good Sheepe barren in euill soyles. If then you desire to haue Sheepe of a curious fine Stable of Wooll, from whence you may draw a thread as fine as silke, you shall

shall see such in *Hereford-shire*, about *Lempster* side, and other speciall parts of that Countrey; in that part of *Worster-shire*, ioyning vpon *Shrop-shire*, and many such like places, yet these Sheep are very little of bone, blacke faced, and beare a very little burthen. The Sheep vpon *Cotfall* hills are of better bone, shape & burthen, but their staple is courser and deeper. The Sheep in that part of *Worster-shire*, which ioyneth on *Warwick-shire*, and many parts of *Warwick-shire*, all *Leicester-shire*, *Buckingham-shire*, and part of *Northampton-shire*; and that part of *Nottingham-shire*, which is exempt from the Forrest of *Sherwood*, beareth a large boned Sheep, of the best shape and deepest staple; chiefly if they be pasture Sheep; yet is their wooll courser then that of *Cotfall*. *Lincolne-shire*, especially in the salt Marshes, haue the largest Sheep, but not the best wooll, for their legges and bellies are long and naked, and their staple is courser then any other: The Sheep in *Torke-shire*, & so Northward, are of reasonable bigge bone, but of a staple rough and hairy; and the Welsh Sheep are of all the worst, for they are both little, and of worse staple; and indeede, are praysed onely in the dish, for they are the sweetest Mutton.

Of the choyse
of Sheep.

Of the Leare.

If now, knowing the natures and properties of the Sheep of every Country, you goe about to stocke your ground, be sure to bring your Sheep from a worse soyle to a better, and not from a better to a worse. The Leare, which is the earth on which a Sheep lyeth, and giueth him his colour, is much to be respected: the red Leare is hold the best, the Duskish, inclining to a little rednesse, is tollerable, but the white or durty Leare starke naught. In the choyse therefore of your Sheep, chuse the biggest boned, with the best wooll, the staple being

being soft, greasie, well curled, and close together, so that a man shall haue much a doe to part it with his fingers. These sheepe besides the bearing of the best burthen, are alwayes the best Butchers ware, & goe soonest away in the Market. Therefore, in the choise of Sheepe for your breed, haue a principall respect to your Rammes, for they euer marre or make a flocke: let them then as neere as you can, haue these properties or shapes. First, large of body in euery generall parte, with a long body, and a large belly; his forehead would be broad, round, and well rising; a cheerefull large eye, straight short nostrils, and a very small muzell; by no meanes any hornes, for the dodder Sheepe is the best breeder, & his issue neuer dangereth the Damme in yeanning, as the horned Sheepe doe: besides, those Sheepe which haue no hornes, are of such strength of head, that they haue oft beene seene to kill those sheepe which haue the largest hornes and best wrinkled: a Sheepe would haue a large vpright necke, somewhat bending like the neck of a Horse, a very broad backe, round buttocks a thicke taile, and short ioynted legges, small, cleane, & nimble, his wooll would be thick, and deepe, couering his belly all ouer; also, his face, and euen to his nostrils, and so downwards to his very knees and hinder houghes. And thus according to the shape, properties & soyle, from whence you chuse your Rams chuse the rest of your flocke also.

The shape of a
Sheepe.

The best time for your Ewes to bring forth their yong ones is, if they be Pasture-Sheepe, about the latter end of *Aprill*, and so vntill the beginning of *Iune*; but if they be Field-Sheepe, then from the beginning of *Ianuary*, till the end of *March*, that their lambs may be strong and able before *May*-day, to follow their dams ouer the rough Fallow lands, and water furrowes, which weake
Lambes.

When Ewes
should bring
forth.

Lambes are not able to doe; and although to yeane thus early in the winter, when there is no grasse springing, and the sharpnesse of the weather also be dangerous, yet the Husbandman must provide shelter and sweet fodder, and the Shepherd with great vigilance be stirring at all houres to preuent euils, for the reasons before shewed: and though the Ewe at the first be scant of Milke, yet as the warme weather increaseth, and the grasse beginneth to Spring, so will her Milke spring also.

Ordering of
Lambes.

Now for your Lambes: about *Michaelmas* you shall seperate the male from the female; and hauing chosen out the worthiest, which you meane to keepe for Rams, put them aside, and then gueld the rest, which euery orderly Shepherd can doe sufficiently; for there is no danger in gelding yong Lambes. The first yeare a male Lambe is called a weather-Hog, and a female Lambe an Ewe-Hog: the second yeare the male is a weather, and the female a Theafe, & then she may be put to the Ram, but if you let her goe ouer that yeere also, then shee is a double Theafe, and will both herselfe be the goodlier Sheepe, & also bring forth the goodlier Lambe; whence it comes, that the best Sheepe-masters make more account of the double Theafe then of any other breeder.

Needfull Observations.

You shall obserue neuer to sheare your Lambes til they be full Hogs: you shall euer wash three dayes before you sheare: the best time of shearing is from *June* to *August*, Ewes are euer good breeders from three yeares old till their mowthes breake. If you would haue your Ewes bring forth male Lambes, note when the Northwinde bloweth, & driving your Flock against the winde: let your Rammes ride as they goe, and this will make the Ewes to conceive Male Lambes: so likewise, if you would

would haue female Lambes, put your Rammes to the Ewes when the winde bloweth out of the South.

Now for the general preservation of Sheep, feed them as much as you can vpon high grounds, which are drie and fruitfull, the grasse sweet, yet so short that it must be got with much labour: but if you must force perforce feed vpon low and moyst grounds, which are infectious, you shall not bring your Sheepe from the Fold (for I now speake to the honest English Husbandman) vntill the Sunne be risen, and that the beames beginne to draw the dew from the earth; then hauing let them forth, driue them to their place of feede & there, with your dog, chase them vp & downe till they be weary, & then let them either feed or take their rest, which they please: this chasing, first, beateth away mill-dewes, & all other dewes from the earth, as also those webs, keis, & flakes which lying on the earth, and as sheep licking them vp, do breed rottenesse: also, this chasing stirreth vp that naturall heate in a sheepe, which drinketh vp, and wasterh the abundance of moysture, which else would turne to rottenesse. Besides, a sheepe being thus chaled and wearied, will fall to his food more deliberately, and not with such greedinesse as otherwise he would, and also make choise of that meate which is best for his health. If a Shepheard once in a moneth, or alwayes when he hath occasion to handle his Sheepe, rub their mouthes with *Bay Salt*, it is an excellent preservation against all manner of sicknesse, and very comfortable for a sheepe also, for a sheepe will very well liue, and abate of his flesh by rubbing his mouth once a day with *Bay salt* only. Now, for as much as not withstanding these principles, a Sheepe falleth into many infirmities, hereafter followeth the seuerall cures of all manner of diseases.

CHAP.

CHAP. 2.

The signes to know a sound Sheepe, and an vn-sound Sheepe.

IF a Sheepe be sound and perfitt, his eye will be bright and cheerefull, the white pure without spot, and the strings red, his gums also will be red, his teeth white and euen, his skin on his brisket will be red, and so will each side betwixt his body and his shoulder where Wooll growes not, his skinne in generall will be loose, his Wooll fast, his breath long, & his feet not hot; but if he be vnfound, then these signes will haue contrary faces, his eyes will be heavy, pale and spotted, his breast and gums white, his teeth yellow and foule, his Wooll when it is pulled will easily part from his body; and when hee is dead open him and you shall finde his belly full of water, his fat yellow, his Liuer putrified, and his flesh moyst and watrish.

CHAP. 3.

Of sicknesse in generall, or the Feauer amongst Sheepe.

CHange of Pasture is a great cure for sicke Sheepe, yet if you finde any more particularly troubled then the rest: Take *Puliot* royall, and stamping it, mixe the iuyce with *Water* and *Vinegar* the quantitie of halfe a pint, and giue it the Sheepe with a horne luke warme, and by no meanes let the Sheepe be much chaf't: also in these sickneses the Shepheard must haue a great care to note from whence the disease groweth, if it proceede from cold, then to driue his sheepe to shelter, if from heat, then to feed them in shady and coole places.

CHAP. 4.

Of the generall Scab or Itch in Sheepe.

THis generall Scab or Itch in Sheepe is of all diseases the most common among them, proceeding from rayny

rainy and wet Weather, which falling vppon their skins, if they happen to be chafte or heated after, they presently breake forth into the scabs, which you shal know by a white filthy scurfe sticking vpon their skinnes: and the most vsual medicine for the same, which all Shepheards vse, is to annoynt the place with *tarre*, and *grease*, mixt together, but if vppon the first appearance of the Itch, you steepe *Pulioll-royall* in Water, and VVash the skin therewith, it will preserue them from running into the scabbe.

CHAP. 5.

Of killing Maggots in Sheepe.

IF a Sheepe be troubled with Maggots, you shall take *Goose-grease*, *tarre*, and *Brimstone*, and mixe them together on the fire, and then annoynte the place therewith, and it will kill the Maggots.

CHAP. 6.

Of the red Water.

THE red Water is a poysonous disease in sheep, offending the heart, and is indeede as the pestilence amongst other cattle: therefore when you finde any of your sheepe infected therewith, you shall first let him blood in the foote betweene the clawes, and also vnder the tayle, and then lay to the sore places *Rew* or *Wormewood* beaten with bay *Salt*, and it helpeth.

CHAP. 7.

Of Lung-sicke, or any cough or cold.

IF your sheepe bee troubled with any sicknesse in his Lungs, which you shall know by his coughing and shortnesse of breath, you shall take *Tussilago* or *Coltsfoot* and *Lungwort*, and stamping them, straine the iuice into a little *hony* and *water*, and giue it the sheepe to drink.

CHAP. 8.
Of the worme in the Claw of the sheepe, or any
other part.

The Cure.

THis Worme breedeth commonly before, betweene the clawes of the foot: but wheresoever it breedeth, it is knowne by the head, which is like a tuft of haire, and will sticke forth in a bunch. The cure is, to slit the foot, and draw out the worme without breaking it: and then annoynt the place with *Tarre* and *tallow* mixt together, for *tarre* simply of it selfe wil draw too much.

CHAP. 9.
Of the wildfire in Sheepe.

THis disease which is called the Wildfire, is a very infectious sicknes, and wil indanger the whole flocke; but howsoever incurable it is held, yet it is certaine, that if you take *Chervile*, and stamping it with old *Ale*, make a salve thereof, and annoynte the sore therewith, it will kill the fire, and set the Sheepe safe: and, though some, for this disease, bury the first infected Sheepe alive, with his heeles vpward, before the sheepe-coat doore, yet this medicine hath bin ever found more effectuall.

CHAP. 10.
Of the diseases of the Gall, as *Choler*, *Iaundise*,
and such like.

The Cure.

THese diseases are knowne by the yellownesse of the sheepes skinne: and the cure is, to take *Plantaine* and *lettice*, & stamping them together, mixe their iuice with *vinegar*, and giue halfe a pinte to a Sheepe to drinke.

CHAP. 11.
Of the tough fleame, or stopping in Sheepe.

IF your Sheepe be stopt in the head, breast, or wessand, either with tough fleame or other cold humors, which you shall know by the running of the nostrils, then take

the

the powder of *Pulioi-royall*, and mixing it with clarified Hony, dissolve it in warme Water the quantity of halfe a pint, and giue it the Sheepe to drinke, and it will loosen the steame.

CHAP. 12.

Of broken bones in Sheepe, or bones out of ioynt.

IF your Sheepe chance to breake a legge, or haue any other bone misplaced, you shall after you haue set it straight and right againe: first bathe it with oyle and wine, and then dipping a cloath in molten *Patchgrease*, roule it about, and splint it as occasion shall serue, and so let it remaine nine dayes, and dresse it againe, and at the end of the next nine dayes, the sheepe will be able to go.

CHAP. 13.

Of any sicknesse in Lambes.

IF your Lambe be sicke, you shall giue it *mares-milke*, or *Goates-milke*, or the owne dammes milke mixt with Water to drinke, and keep it very warme.

CHAP. 14.

Of the Sturdy, turning-euill, or More-found.

THese diseases proceede from rankenesse of blood, which offendeth the braine, and other inward parts. The cure then is to let the sheep blood in the eye veines, temple veines, and through the nostriles, then to rub the places with young *Nettles* bruised.

CHAP. 15.

Of diseases in the eyes, as the Haw, dimnesse, or any sorenesse.

IF your sheepe haue any imperfection in his eyes, you shall drop the myce of *Seladaine* into them, and it is a present helpe.

CHAP. 16.

Of water in a Sheepes belly.

IF a sheepe haue Water in his belly between the outward flesh and the rimme, then you may safely aduenture to let it forth by making a little hole through the flesh, & putting in a quill, but if it be betweene the rimme and the bagge, then it is incurable, for you may by no meanes cut the rimme asunder: When the water is let forth, you shal stitch vp the hole, and annoynt it with *Tarre* and *butter* mixt together. This Water if it remaine in the body will rot the sheepe.

CHAP. 17.

Of the tagd or belt sheepe.

The Cure:

A Sheepe is sayd to be tagd or belt, when by a continuall squirt running out of his ordure, hee berayeth his tayle, in such wise that through the heate of the dung it scaldeth, and breedeth the scabbe therein. The cure is, with a paire of sheares to cut away the tags, and to lay the sore bare and raw, and then to throw earth dried vpon it, and after that *tarre* and *goose grease* mixt together.

CHAP. 18.

Of the poxe in sheepe.

The Cure.

THe Poxe in sheepe and smal red pimples like purples rising on the skin, and they are infectious. The cure is, to take *Rosemary* and boyle the leaues in *vinegar*, and bathe the sores therewith, and it wil heale them: change of pasture is good for this disease, and you shal also separate the sicke from the sound.

CHAP. 19.

Of the wood-euill or Crampe.

THis disease is weaknesse or straitning of the sinewes, got by colds and surfeits: it is very mortall, and will

runne through a whole flocke. The cure is, to take *Cink-foule*, or *Five-leaved* grasse, and boile it in Wine, and giue The cure. the sheepe a pinte thereof to drinke, and keep him warm, and chafe his legges with oyle and *vinegar*.

CHAP. 20.

*Of making an Ewe to loue her owne Lambe,
or any other Ewes Lambe.*

IF an Ewe grow vnnaturall, and will not take to her Lambe after she hath yeaned it, you shal take a little of the cleane of the Ewe, which is the bed in which the Lambe lay, and force the Ewe to eat it, or at least chew it in her mouth, and shee will fall to loue it naturally: but if an Ewe haue cast her Lamb, and you would haue her take to another Ewes Lambe, you shall take the Lambe which is dead, and with it rub and daube the liue Lambe all ouer, and so put it the Ewe, and she will take as naturall to it, as if it were her owne.

CHAP. 21.

Of licking vp poison.

IF a Sheepe chance to licke vpany poyson, you shall perceiue it by a suddaine swelling and reeling of the sheepe. And the cure is, as soone as you see it stanger, to open the mouth, and you shall finde one or moe blisters vpon the tongue Rootes, you shall presently breake The Cure. them with your fingers, and rubbe them with *Earth* or *Sage*, and then pisse into the sheepes mouth, and it will do well.

CHAP. 22.

Of Lambes yeared sicke.

IF a Lambe be yeaned sicke and weake, the Skepheard shall fold it vp in his Cloake, blow into the mouth of it, and then drawing the dennes dug, squirt milke into the mouth of it.

CHAP. 23.

Of making an Ewe to be easily deliuered.

IF an Ewe can hardly bring forth or yeane her Lambe, you shal take *Balsaminte* or *Horse-mint*, and put either the iuyce or powder of it into a little strong ale, and giue it the Ewe to drinke, and shee will yeane presently.

CHAP. 24.

Of teeth loose.

IF a sheepes teeth be loose, let him blood in his gums, and vnder his taile, and then rub his teeth with *earth*, *Salt* and *Sage*.

CHAP. 25.

Of increasing milke in Ewes.

Nothing increaseth Milke in Ewes more then change of Pasture and feeding : driving them one while vnto the Hills, another while to the Vallyes; and where the Grasse is sweetest and short, the sheepe eateth with best appetite, there see you continue longest: for touching giuing them *Fitches*, *Dill*, *Annisseedes*, and such like, this change of ground will make Milkespring much better.

CHAP. 26.

Of the staggers, or lease sicknesse in Lambes, or elder sheepe.

THE Staggers is ingendred in sheepe by surfeiting on Oke leaues, Hawthorne leaues, or such like, which Lambes are very apt vnto: it is a colde corrupt blood, or seame, gathered together about the braine: and indeed is suddainly mortall. The best cure is, to take *Asafetida*, and dissolue it in warme Water, and put the quantity of halfe a spooneful into each care of the Sheep or Lambe, and it is a present remedy.

The Cure.

CHAP.

CHAP. 27.

Of wormes in the guts of sheepe or Lambes.

Sheepe are as subiect to Wormes in their guts and stomackes as any other cattle whatsoever, which you shall know by beating their bellies with their feete, and by looking continually at their bellies. The cure is, to take the leaues of *Coliander*, and to stampe them, and then mixing the iuyce thereof with *Honey*, to giue the sheepe to drinke, and then chase him a little, and keepe him two or three houres fasting.

The Cure

CHAP. 28.

Of the losse of the Cudde.

That which helpeth the losse of the Cud in Oxe, or Cow, the same is a present remedy for sheepe, and is spoke of before in a former Chapter.

CHAP. 29.

Of saving sheepe from the rot.

This disease of rottenness is the cruellest of all other amongst Sheepe, and extendeth his violence ouer all the flocke: nay, ouer Towneships and Countreyes: and though it be held of most men incurable, yet good Gouvernement, and this Receite I shall deliuer you, will not onely preuent it, but preserue your Sheepe safe: Therefore, as soone as you perceiue that any of your Sheepe are rainted, you shall take *Adraques*, which is a certaine salt, gathered from the salt Marches, in the heate of Summer, when the tide is going away, and leauing certaine drops of salt Water on the Grasse, then the violent heat of the Sunne turnes it to salt: and to speake briefly, all salt made by the violence of the Sunnes heate onely, is taken for *Adraques*, of which there is infinite store in *Spaine*. With this *Adraques* rub the mouthes of all your Sheepe once a weeke, and you shall neuer neede to feare

the rotting of them, for it hath beene wel tried: and as I imagine, the experiment was found out from this very ground. It is a rule, and wel knowne at this day in *Lincolneshire*, and in *Kent*, that vpon the salt Marshes sheep did neuer dye of the Rot: no other reason being known therefore, but the licking vp of that Salt, and without doubt, it is most infallible and most easie.

CHAP. 30.

A few precepts for the Shepheard.

[T is meete that euery good and carefull Shepheard know what foode is good for Sheepe, what hurtfull: that following the one, and eschewing the other, he may euer keepe his Cattle in health. The grasse that is most wholesome for sheepe, is that which hath growing in it good store of *Mellilot*, *Clauer*, *Salse-heale*, *Cyncklefoyle*, *Broome*, *Pympernell*, and white *Henband*.

The Grasse which is vnwholesome for Sheepe, is that which hath growing amongst it, *Speare wort*, *Pennimort*, or *Penny-grasse*, and any Weed which grow from inundations or ouerflowes of water; likewise, *Knot-grasse* is not good, nor *Mildewd-grasse*. Of all Rots the hungar-rot is the worst, for it both putrifieth the flesh and skin, and this is most incident to field-sheepe, for to Pasture-sheepe it neuer hapneth. The next Rot to it, is the Pelt-rot, which cometh by great store of raine, immediately after a sheepe is new shorne, which mildewing the skin, corrupteth the body; and this also is most incident to field-sheepe, which want shelter.

There be little white Snailles which a sheepe will lick vp, and they will soone rot him.

There will grow vpon an Ewes teats little dry scabs, which wil stop their milke; when the Lambes sucke, the shepheard must haue care to dul them away.

A Sheepe wil haue a bladder of water vnder his chin sometimes, which the shepheard must be carefull to let out and lance, or the sheepe will not prosper.

It is good not to sheare sheep before Midsummer, for the more he sweateth in his wooll, the better, and more kindly it is.

If you will know the age of your sheepe, looke in his mouth, and when he is one sheare he wil haue two broad teeth afore: when he is two sheare, hee will haue foure broad teeth afore: when he is three, he will haue sixe, and when he is foure sheare, hee will haue eight: and after those yeares his mouth will beginne to breake: for, touching that rule of the euennesse and vneuenesse of the mouth, it is vncertayne, and fayleth vpon many occasions.

The end of the Sheepe.

Of Goates.

CHAP. I.

Of Goates, and of their nature.

Seing Goates are not of any generall vse in our Kingdome, but only nourished in some wilde and barren places, where Cattle of better profitt can hardly be maintayned, as in the mountaynous parts of *Wales*, in the barrenest parts of *Cornewall* and *Deuonshire*, on *Malborne* hills, and some few about the *Peake*: I wil not stand vpon any large discourse, but as briefly as I can, giue you their natures and cures. You shal then know, that the
Goate

The nature of
Goates.

Goate is a beast of a hot, strong, and lusty constitution; especially in the act of generation, that they exceed all other cattell: delight to liue in mountaines that be high, craggy, and full of Bushes, Bryars, & other wood; they will feed in any plaine pastures, but their speciall delight is in brousing vpon trees, they are somble of foot, that they will goe in places of greatest danger. The profit which cometh from is their Milke, which is an excellent restorative, & their Kids which are an excellent venison. They are in other Countreys, as in *Spaine*, the Islands of the *Azores*, and the Islands of the *Canaries*, preferred for the chase & for hunting as wee preserve our *Deere* both red and fallow and make excellent pastime.

His shape.

For the shape of the Goate: he would haue a large body, and well hayred, great legs, vpright ioyntes, not bending, a necke plaine and short, a head small and slender, large hornes, & bending, a big eye, and a long beard, and his colour white, black, or pide. Some doe vse to sheare them, to make rough mantles of, but it not so with vs in *England*. The shee-Goate would haue large teates, and big vdder, hanging cares, and no hornes, as they haue in many places.

The ordering
of Goates.

These Goates would be kept in small flockes, or heards, as not aboue a hundred in a heard: as they must in the heate of Sommer haue much shade, so in the winter likewise much shelter, for they can neither endure extremity of heate nor cold, especially, the violence of Winter, for that will make the Shee-Goate cast her Kid, or bring it forth vntimely. These keue Mast well, but yet you must giue them other foode to mixe with it. The best time to let the male and female goe together, is about the beginning of *December*. If you house Goats, in the Winter, let them haue no litter to lye on, but the
floore

floore paved, or grauelled, for otherwise, their owne heat will annoy them: they must also be kept very cleanly, for they can endure no filthy faviours. For the young Kids, you shall in all points order them as you doe your Lambes.

Now, for their preservation; if they be suffered to goe and chuse their owne food, they are to themselves so good physitians, that they will seldome or neuer be troubled with any inward sicknesse; onely the vnnaturall excesse of their lust maketh them grow soone old, and so both past vse and profit. For those particular diseases which accidentally fall vpon them: here followeth the Cures.

CHAP. II.

Of the pestilence in Goates, or any inward and hidden sicknesse.

IF you perceiue your Goates to droope, or looke with sullen or sad countenances, it is an assured signe of sicknesse; but if they foame or lather at the mouth, then it is a signe of the pestilence. The cure is, first, to seperate them from the sound, then to let them bloud, and giue them the Buds and Leaues of *Celodine*, with rushes and reedes to eate, and it is a present remedy. The cure.

CHAP. 12.

Of the dropsie in Goates.

GOates are very much subiect vnto the Dropsie, through their excesse drinking of water; the signe whereof is a great inflammation and heate in the skin: the cure is to seeth *Wormewood* in *Water* and *Salt*, and giue a pint thereof to the Goate to drinke diuers mornings, for to slit and let out the water vnder the shoulder, is not so certaine and safe a cure. The Cure.

CHAP.

CHAP. 4.

Of stopping the teats.

The Cure.

THere will ingender in the teats of Goates, a certayne tough hard fleame, which will stoppe the milke from issuing: Which to cure, you shall with your finger and your thumbe pull it away, and then annoynt the place with *Honey*, and the *Goates milke* mixt together.

CHAP. 5.

Of Goates that cannot Kidde.

GOates aboute other Cattle, are troubled with hardness in Kidding, by reason that if they be chafed or hunted, their Kiddles will turne in their Bellies: the Remedy then to preserve them from that danger, is to keepe them quiet and vntroubled, vntill they haue Kided.

CHAP. 6.

Of the tetter, or drye scab in Goates.

TO heale any Tetter, or drye scabbe in Goates, take *blacke sope*, *Tarre*, *Hogs-grease*, and *Brimstone*, mixe them well together, and annointe the sores therewith, and it wil heale them.

CHAP. 7.

Of gelding Kiddles in the Summer season.

KIds beinge gult in Summer season, as those which are late kidded must necessarily be; the Flye wil be to busie with the sore, that with their blowings they wil breed such store of Maggots in the Wound, that it wil endanger their liues: to defend them then from such annoyance of the Flye, you shal take *Soot*, *Tarre*, and thicke *Creame*, and mixe them wel together, and annoynt the Wound therewith, and it wil both heale it, and keep the Flye away.

CHAP.

CHAP. 8.

Of the itch in Goates.

IF your Goats be troubled with any Itch, so that they cannot feed for clawing and biting themselves, you shall wash their skinnes with old *Chamber-lye*, and greene *Coporas* well boyled together, and it will kill the Itch.

CHAP. 9.

Of the tuell stopping in Goates.

GOates when they are sucking on their dammes, or when they are new Kiddled, will commonly haue a great laxc or squirt, so that the ordure which cometh from them, if it be not well cleansed and taken from them, it will with their owne natural heate so bake and drye, that it wil stop vp their Tuels, so that they cannot dung, which if it be not holpen, the Kidde wil dye. The cure is, to cleanse the place, and open the Tuell, and then put into it an inch or there about of a smal *Candles* end dipt in *Hony*, and then annoynte all the Tuell ouer with *Capons-grease*. The Cure.

CHAP. 10.

Of the staggers, or reeling euill in Goates.

IF your Goates be troubled with the Staggers or Reeling euill, which is a disease bred in them by the violent heat of the Sunne, you shall take *Bay salt* and *verduyce*, and mixe them together, and giue the Goate halfe a pint thereof to drinke: or else take *House-lecke*, and *Dragons*, of each a like, so grounds of *Ale*, with a little new *Milke*, stampe the hearbes, and then mingle them together, then put thereto a few *genes* grossely beaten, and then boile it againe, then coole it, and giue the sicke Goate three or foure spoonefuls thereof to drinke, and it wil cure her. Now for any other infirmities which shall happen

happen vnto Goates, you may cure them with the same medicines which you cure sheepe, for their natures do not much differ.

The end of the Goate.



Of Swine.

CHAPTER 1.

Of all manner of Swine, their natures, use, shapes, and preservations.



Although Swine are accounted troublesome noysome, vnruely, and great rauenours, as indeede their natures are not much differing from such qualities, yet the vtility and profite of them, will easily wipe off those offences; for to speake truely of the Swine, he is the Husband-mans best Scauenger, and the Huswiues most wholesome sinke, for his foode and liuing is by that which would else rot in the yard, make a beastly, and breed no good meature, or being cast downe the ordinary siuke in the house breed noysome sinels, corruption, and infection: for from the Husband-man he taketh pulse, chaffe, Barne-dust, mans ordure, Garbage, and the Weedes of his yard: and from the Huswife her drasse, twillings, Whey, washing of tubs, and such like, with which he will liue and keepe a good state of body, very sufficiently, and though he is accounted good in no place but the dish onely, yet there hee is so louely and so wholesome, that all other faults may be borne with.

He

He is by nature greedy, giuen much to roote vp grounds, and reare downe fences, he is very lecherous, and in that act tedious and brutish: he is subiect to much anger, and the fight of the Boars is exceeding mortall: they can by no meanes endure stormes winds, or foule weather, they are excellent obseruers of their owne homes, and exceeding great louers one of another: so that they will die vpon any beast that offendeth their fellowes.

Now touching the choyse of swine, you shall vnderstand that no Countrey in *England* breedeth naturally better Swine one then another: But if any haue preeminence, then I must preferre *Leicestershire* and some parts of *Northamptonshire* and clay-Countrys bordering *Leicester-shire*, and the reason I take to bee, their great multiplicite of graine, especially Beanes and pulse. For the Mast-countrys, though they are good feeders, they are no large breeders, whence it comes that your wilde Swyne is euer your least Swine, but your sweetest Bacon. But if the race and keeping be a like, the proportion and goodnesse will be a like: therefore in the choyse of your Swyne, chiefly the Boares & Sows which you breed of, let them be long and large of body, deepe sided, and deepe belled, thicke thighes, and short legges, for though the long-legged Swyne appeare a goodly beast, yet he but couseleneth the eye, and is not so profitable to the Butcher: high clawes, thicke necke, a short and strong groyne, and a good thick chine well set with stronge bristles: the colour is best which is all of one peece, as all white, or all fanded, the pided are the worst & most apt to take Meazels, the black is tolerable, but our Kingdom through the coldnes breedeth them seldome.

Of the choyse
and shape of
Swine.

The vse and profit of Swine is onely (as the Husbandman saith) for the roote, which is Bacon, for the spit which

The vse and
profit of Swine.

which is Porke, Sowse and Puddings, and for breede, which is their Pigs onely. To haue too many Sowes in a yard is not good; for their increafe, and bringing forth is so great, that they will for want of food eate one another: A Sowe will bring forth Pigs three times a yeere, namely at the end of euery ten weekes, and the numbers are great which they will bring forth: for I haue known one Sow haue twenty Pigs at one litter, twelue, foureteen & sixteene are very common; yet a Sow can bring vp no more Pigs then she hath Teats, therefore lookc how many she hath, and so many Pigs preserue of the best, the rest cast away, or put to other Sowes which want, yet giue sucke. A Sow will bring Pigs from one yeere olde, till she be seauen yeares old: The Pigs which you reare after you haue chosen the best for Boares or Sowes to breed on, geld the rest both males & females: the males will make goodly Hogs, which are excellent Bacon or Porke, & the females which are called spayd-guils, will doe the like; and breed a great deale more grease in their bodies, whence it comes that the husband man esteemes one spayd-guilt before two Hogs. Young Shots which are are Swine of three quarters, or but one yeere old, are the daintiest Porke.

Now for the preteruation of Swine, it is contained in their gouernment and food, and is all that belongeth to the office of the Swine-herd. The orderliest feeding of Swine is, (when you keep them, but in good state of body, and not seeke to fat them) in the morning early when you vnstie them is to giue them Diaffe, Pulse, or other garbage, with swilings in their troughes, and when they haue eaten it to driue them to the field, where they may graze and roote for their food: and of grounds the soft marsh and moorish grounds are the best, where they
may

may get the Roots of Sedge, Reeds, Rushes, Knot-grasse, and such like, which is wholesome for Swine; or the Fallow or tylthe field, where they may Roote at pleasure, and by killing the Weed bring profit to the earth: and at the fall of the Lease, it is good to drue them to hedges, where they may get Hawes, Hips, Sloes, crabs, or such fruite, which is also very wholesome: and the poorer sort will gather these fruites, and keep them safe to feed their Swine with all the Winter. When Evening cometh, you shall drue your Swine home, and then filling their troughes with Drasse and swilling, let them fill their bellies, and then slie them vp, so shal you keepe them from doing other hurts or iniuries. If once in a fortnight you mixe with your swillings some *Radle*, or *red Oaker*, it will preserve them wonderfully from Meazels and all inward infections. And thus much for the generall discourse of Swine: Now I will proceede to their particular infirmities, and other businesses.

CHAP. II.

*Of the Feauer, or any hidden sicknesse
in Swine.*

THere is no Beast maketh his sicknesse so apparant as the Swine, for when he findeth any griefe or distemperature in his body, he presently droopeth, forsakes his meate, and will not eat till he find in himselfe a perfect Recouery: Therefore when you shall so find him to forsake his meate, you shal first let him blood vnder his taile, and vnder his eares, and if they bleed not freshly enough you shall beate them with a small sticke, and that will bring forth the blood, then wispe about the wounds the barked of a young *Oster*, and then keep him warme, and giue him to drinke warme swillings, wel mixt with *Barley* meale, and *red oaker*.

The Cure.

CHAP. 3.
Of the Murren, Pestilence, or Catber in Swine.

THese diseases being all of one nature, are very much incident to Swine, and spring from many grounds, as from corruption in blood ingendred by the eating of rotten fruit, or too much Butchers garbage, and many times by eating too ranke grasse, wherein is much *Hemlocke*: The particular signes are, moyst eyes, and their heads borne on each side, but the generall knowledge is their fasting and morality. The cure is, to give them in warme wash, *Hens-dung*, and boyld *Linerwort*, with a little red oaker.

The Cure.

CHAP. 4.
Of the Gall in Swine.

SWine will oft have an over-flowing of the Gall, because choller is much powerfull in them, which you shal know by a swelling which wil rise vnder their iawes. And the cure is, to stampe *Gallwort*, or *Saffron*, and mixe it with *hony* and *water*, and then strayingning it, give it the Swine to drinke by a pint at a time.

The Cure.

CHAP. 5.
Of the Meazels in Swine.

THIS Dilease of all other is most common in Swine, and with most ease helped: As thus, you shall take the oldest *vrine* that you can get, and mixe it with red oaker, till it be thicke, and about the quantity of an Ale quart, then mixe it with a gallon of warme *sweet whey*, and give it the Swine to drinke, after he hath bin kept all night fasting.

CHAP. 6.
Of impostumes in any part of a Swine.

SWine will have *Impostumes* in many parts of their bodies, as vnder their throates, their eares, bellies, and

oft

oft vpon their sides. The cure is, if they be soft, to lance them, and let out the matter, and then heale them with *Tarre* and *butter*, but if they be not soft, then let the Swine blood vnder the tongue, and rubbe all his mouth, chappes and groine, with *wheate* meale and *salt*, and the *Impostume* will go away. The Cure.

CHAP. 7.

Of vomiting in Swine.

If your Swine do vomit and cast vp his meate, you shall giue him spelted *Beanes* to eate, and they will strengthen his stomacke.

CHAP. 8.

Of leanness, mistske, scurfe, and manginess in Swine.

These Diseases proceed from corruption of blood, ingendred by lying Wet in their styes, hauing filthy rotten Litter, or much scarcity of moue. The cure is, first to let the Swine blood vnder the tayle, then to take a VVool-card, and to combe off all the scurfe and filth from the Swines backe, euen till his skinne bleede: The Cure: then take *sare*, *Hogs-grease*, and *Brimstone*, and mixing them well together, annoynt the Swine therewith, then let the stye be mended, his Litter be sweet, and giue him good warme food, and the Swine will be fat and sound very suddainly.

CHAP. 9.

Of the sleeping euill in Swine.

Swine are much subiect to this disease in the Summer-time, and you shal know it by their continuall sleeping, and neglecting to eate their meat. The cure is, to houle them vp, and keep them fasting twenty & foure houres; then in the morning when hunger pincheth them, to giue The Cure. them to drinke Water, in which is stampd good store of

Stonecroke; which, as soone as they haue drunke, they will vomite and cast, and that is a present Remedy.

CHAP. 10.

Of paine in the Milt.

Swine are oft troubled with paine in their Milts or Spleenes, which proceedeth from the eating of Mast, when they are first put thereunto, through their ouer greedy eating therof, and is knowne by a Reeling, going of one side. The cure is, to giue them the iuyce of *worme-woode*, in a little *Honed-water* to drinke, and it will aswage the payne.

CHAP. 11.

Of the vnnaturalnes of Sowes.

MAny Sowes do prooue so vnnaturall that they will deuoure their Pigs when they haue farro'd them, which springeth from an vnnatural greedinesse in them: which to helpe, you must watch her when she farroweth, and take away the Pigs as they fall, then take the wreckling, or worst Pigge, and annoynt it all ouer with the iuyce of *Stonecroke*, and so giue it the Sow agayne: and if she deuoure it, it will make her cast and vomit so extreame,ly, that the payne of the surfet will make her loathe to do the like agayne: But of all cures, the best for such an vnnaturall beast is to feed her wel, and then kill her.

CHAP. 12.

Of the Laxe or Flixie in Hogges.

FOr the Laxe or Flixie in Swine, you shall giue them *Veriui*ce and milke mixt together to drinke, and then feede him with dry food, as *spletted Beanes*, *Acornes*, or *Acorne-buskes*. This is also excellent and approued for young Pigges and Shots, when they haue any scou-
ring.

CHAP.

CHAP. 13.

Of the lugging of Swine with Dogges.

IF your Swine bee extreamely lugged and bitten with dogs, to prevent the ranckling and impostumation of the soare, you shall annoynt it with *vinegar, sope,* and *tallow* mixt together, and it will cure the same.

CHAP. 14.

Of the Poxe in Swine.

THe Poxe is a filthy and infectious Disease in Swine, proceeding from corrupt blood, ingendred by poverty, wet lying, lownesse, and such like; and the Swine can neuer prosper which hath them. The cure is, to giue him first to drinke two spoonefuls of *London treacle* in a pinte of *honied-water*, which wil expel the infection outwardly, then to annoynt the sores with *Brimstone* and *Boares-grease* mixt together, and so seperate the sicke from the sound.

The cure.

CHAP. 15.

Of killing Maggots in the eares or other parts of Swine.

IF Maggots shall breede in the eares of your Swine, which haue beenc lugged with Dogges, for want of good looking vnto, as often it happeneth: you shall take either the sweetest Wort you can get, or else *hony*, and annoynt the sores therewith, and the Maggots presently will fall off and dye.

CHAP. 16.

Of feeding a Swine exceeding fat, either for Bacon, or for Larde.

Diuers men according to the nature of diuers Countries, haue diuers wayes in feeding of their Swine, as those which liue neare vnto Woods and places where store of Mast is, turne their Swine vnto the Mast for sixe

The feeding of Swine in wood Countries.

or eight weekes, and then hauing got flesh and fatnesse on their backs do bring them home, and put them vp in Sties, and then feede them for ten dayes or a fortnight after, with old dry Pease giuen them oft in the day, a little at once, with Water, as much as they will drinke: for this will harden the flesh and fat so, that it will not consume when it comes to boyling: this manner of feeding is good, and not to be disliked.

The feeding of
Swine in cham-
paine Coun-
tries.

Now, the feeding of Swine in champaine Countries, which are far from Woods, is in this manner: First, you shal stye vp those Swine which you intend to feede, and let them not come out of the stye until they be fed, but haue their food and water brought vnto them: now, the first two daies you shal giue them nothing; the third day you shal early in the morning giue them a pretty quantity of dry pease or Beanes; at noone you shal giue them as much more, at foure a clock as much more, and when you go to bed as much more, but all that day no water: The next day, you shal feede him agayne at the same houres, and set water by them that they may drinke at their owne pleasures; and twice or thrice a week, as your prouision will serue you, it is good to fill their bellies with sweet Whay, Butter milke, or warme wash, but by no meanes scant the proportion of their Pease; and by thus doing, you shal feede a Swine fat enough for the slaughter in foure or five weekes.

Of feeding at
the Reeko.

There be other Husbandmen in champaine Countries, as in *Leicestershire*, and such like, that put their Swine to pease rekes, or stackes set in the fields, neere vnto water furrowes, or rundles, so that they may let the water into the stacke-yard: and then morning and euening cut a cutting of the stacke or reeke, & spread the reapes amongst the swine: this manner of feeding is best for smal porkers and

and wil fat them very reasonably in three VWeekes or a moneth. If you feede sheepe amongst your Porkets, it is very good, and daily by many practised; for by that meanes you shall not loose any of your Graine, for what your sheep cannot gather vp, your Porkets will.

Now, for such as live in or neare about great Cities, or Townes, as *London, Yorke*, or such like, and haue neither great store of Mast, nor great store of Graine; yet they haue a manner of feeding as good, and somewhat more speedier then any of the other, onely the Bacon is not so sweet or toothsome; and thus it is: They stie vp their farlings, as is before sayde, and then take Chandlers Graines, which is the dregges and offall of rendred Tallow, as hard skinned, kels, and fleshy lumpes, which will not melt, together with other course skins of the Tallow, suet, or Kutchin fec, and mixing it warme with, give it the Swine to eat three or foure times in the day, and it will suddainly puffed him vp with fatnesse; then bestow of euery Swine a Bushell of dry pease to harden his flesh, and you may then kill them at your pleasure. The only danger of this food is, it will at first sometimes make Swine scoure; especially young Pigges, if they eat it: but as soone as you perceiue such a fault, give vn- to your elder swine, milke and verduyce, and to your sucking Pigs verduyce only.

Of feeding of
Swine, in, or a-
bout great
Cities.

Now, lastly, the best feeding of a swine for larde, or a Boare for Brawne, is to feed them the first weeke with Barley sodden till it breake, and fed in such quantity, that it may euer be giuen sweet: then after to feed them with raw mault from the store, before it be dried, till they be fat enough: and then for a weeke after, to give them dry Pease or Beans to harden their flesh. Let their drinke be the washing of Hoggesheads, or Ale barrels, or

Of feeding
Hogs for larde,
or Boares for
Brawne.

sweete Whay, and let them haue store thereof. This manner of feeding, breeds the whitest, fattest, and best flesh that may be, as hath beene approoued by the best Husbands.

The end of the Swine of all sorts.

Of Conies.

CHAP. I.

Of the tamerich Conie, his nature, choyse, profit, and preservation.

The nature of
the Cony.



ALL sortes of Conies may as well be kept tame as Wilde, and doe aboute other Beasts delight in imprisonment and solitarinesse, which proceedeth from the strength of melancholy in their nature, being creatures so much participation of the earth, that their delight is to liue in Holes, Rockes, and other darke Cauerne. They are violently hot in the act of generation, and performe it with such vigour and excesse, that they swoone and lye in trances a good space after the deede is done. The males are giuen to much cruelty, and would kill the yong Rabbits if he could come to them: Whence it proceedeth, that the Females after they haue kindled, hide their young ones, and close vp their holes, so that the Bucke conie may not find them. The Female, or Doe conies are wonderfull in their increase, and bring forth young ones euery moneth: Therefore, when you keepe them tame in Boxes, you must obserue to Watch them, and as

soone

soone as they haue kindled, to put them to the Bucke, or otherwise they will mourne, and hardly bring vp their younge ones.

The boxes, in which you shal keepe your tame Conies, would be made of thinne Wainescot boardes. some two foot square, and one foot high; and that square must be diuided into two roomes, a greater room with open windowes of wyar, through which the Conie may feed, & a lesser room without light, in which the the Conie may lodge, and kinde, & before them both a Trough, in which you may put meate, and other necessaries for the Conie: and thus you may make Boxe vpon Boxe in diuers stories, keeping your Bucks by themselves, and your Does by themselves, except it be such Does as haue not bred, and then you may let a Bucke lodge with them: also when your Doe hath kindled one nest, & then kindleth another you shall take the first from her, and put them together in a seuerall Boxe, amongst Rabbits of their owne age, provided that the Boxe be not pestred, but that they may haue ease and libertie.

Now, for the choyse of these tame rich Conies, you shall not, as in other cattell, looke to their shape, but to their richnesse, onely elect your Buckes the largest, and goodliest Conies you can get: and for the richnesse of the skin, that is accounted the richest, which hath the equallest mixtur of black & white haire together, yet the black rather shadowing the white, then the white any thing at all ouer masking the black, for a black skinne with a few siluer haire is much richer then a white skin with a few blacke haire, but as I said before, to haue them equally or indifferently mixt is the best aboue all other the Furre would be thicke, deep, smooth, and shining, and a blacke coate without siluer haire, though it be not reckoned a

rich.

Of Boxes for tame Conies.

Of the choyse of rich conies.

rich coate, yet it is to be preferred before a White, a pyed, a yellow, a dunne, or a gray.

Of the profite
of rich Conies.

Now for the profit of these rich Conies, (for vntlesse they did farre away, and by many degrees exceede the profit of all other Conies, they were not worthy the charge which must be bestowed vpon them) it is this: First, euery one of the rich Conies which are killed in season, as from *Martilmas* vntill after *Candlemas*, is worth any five other Conies, for they are of body much fatter and larger, and when another skin is worth two pence or three pence at the most, they are worth two shillings, or two shillings sixe pence: Againe, they increase oftner, and bring forth more Rabbits at one kindling then any wilde *Cony* doth: they are euery ready at hand for the dish, Winter and Summer, without charge of Nets, Ferrets, or other Engines, and giue their bodies *gratis*, for their skins will euery pay their masters charge with a most large interest.

Of the feeding
and preseruati-
on of Conies.

Now for the feeding and preseruati-
on of these rich Conies, it is nothing so costly or trou-
blesome as many haue imagined, and as some (ignorant in the skill of kee-
ping them) haue made the World thinke: for the best
food you can feed a *Cony* with, is the sweetest, softest,
sofdest, and best *Hay* you can get, of which one load will
serue two hundred couples a yeare, and one of the flocks
of two hundred, you may spend in your Plowse two
hundred, and sell in the Market two hundred more, yet
maintayne the stocke good, and answere euery ordina-
ry casualty. This *Hay* in little clouen stickes might with
ease reach it, and pull it out of the same, yet so as they
may not scatter nor waste any. In the troughes vnder
their Boxes, you shall put sweet *Oates*, and their Water,
and this should be the ordinary and constant food where
with

wich you should feed your *Conies*, for all other should be vsed but Physically, as for the preservation of their healths: as thus, you shall twice or thrice in a fortnight, for the cooling of their bodies, give them *Greenes*, as *Mallows*, *Clauer-grasse*, *Sower-dockes*, blades of greene *corne*, *cabbage*, or *colewort* leaues, and such like, al which cooleth and nourisheth exceedingly: some vse to give them sometimes sweet *graines*, but that must be vsed very seldome, for nothing sooner rotteth a *Cony*.

You must also haue great care, that when you cut any *grasse* for them, or other *Weeds*, that there grow no young *Hemlocke* amongst it, for though they will eate it with all greedinesse, yet it is a present poyson, and kills suddainly: you must also haue an especiall care euery day to make their *Boxes* sweet and cleane, for the strong fauour of their ordure and pisse is so violent, that it will both annoy themselves, and those which shall be frequent amongst them.

Now for the infirmities which are incident vnto them they are but two: the first is *Rottennesse*, which cometh by giuing them too much greene meate, or gathering their *greenes* and giuing it them with the dew on, therefore let them haue it but seldome, and then the driness of the *Hay* will euer drinke vp the moysture, knit them, and keep them sound without danger.

Of the Rot in
Conies.

The next is a certaine rage or madnesse, ingendred by corrupt blood, springing from the ranknes of their keeping; and you shal know it by their wallowing and tumbling with their heeles vpward, and leaping in their boxes. The cure is, to gaue them *Hare-thistle* to eate, and it wil heale them. And thus much of the tame rich *Cony*, and his properties.

Of madnesse
in Conies.

The end of the foure footed Beasts.

THE



The second Booke.

Of Poultry.

CHAPTER I.

Containing the ordering, fattening, cramming, and curing of all infirmities of Poultry, as Cockes, Hens, Chickens, Capons, Geese, Turkeys, Pheasants, Partridges, Quails, House-doves, and all sorts of Fowle whatsoever. And first of the Dunghil-cocke, Hen, Chicken, and Capon.



Some small thing hath bin Written of this nature before, but so drawne from the opinions of old Writers, as *Italians*, *French*, *Dutch*, and such like, that it hath no coherence or congruity with the practise and experience of English customes, both their Rules and climbs being so different from ours, that except wee were to liue in their Countries, the rules which are printed are vselesse, and to no purpose. To let passe then the opinion of Strangers, and come to our owne homebred knowledge, which is so mixed with all profitable experiments, that it needeth not the helpe of other Nations so much, as men would make vs beleue.

Of the Dunghill-cocke.

You shal vnderstand that the dunghill-Cocke (for the fighting Cocke deserueth a much larger and particular discourse) is a Fowle of al other Birds the most warlikest, stately, and maiestically, very tame and familiar with the Man, and naturally inclined to liue and prosper in habitable Houses: he is hot and strong in the Act of generation, and wil serue ten Hens sufficiently, and some, twelue and

and thirteene: He delighteth in open and liberal plaines, where he may lead forth his Hens into greene pastures, and vnder hedges, where they may warme and bathe themselves in the Sunne, for to be pent vp in walled places, or in paved Courts is most vnnatural vnto them, neither will they prosper therein.

Now of the choyse and shape of the dung hill-Cock, Of the choyse and shape of the Cocke. he would be of a large & well sised body, long from the head to the rumpe, and thicke in the garth; his necke would bee long, loose and curiously bending it, and his body together being straight, & high vp erected, as the Falcon and other birds of pray are, his combe, wattles, and throat would be large, great compasse, iagged, and very Scarlet red, his eyes round and great, the colour answering the colour of his plume or male, as gray with gray, red with red, or yellow with yellow. his bill would be crooked, sharp, & strongly set on to his head; the colour being suitable with the colour of the feathers on his head, his maine or necke feathers would be very long, bright, and shining, covering from his head to his shoulders, his legs straight, and of a strong beame, with large long spurres, sharpe and a little bending, and the colour blacke, yellow, or blewish, his claws short, strong, and well wrinkled; his tayle long, and covering his body very closely: and for the generall colour of the dung hill-Cocke, it would be red, for that is medicinall, and oft vsed in Cullisses and restoratiues. This Cock should be valiant within his owne walke, and if he be a little knauish, he is so much the better; he would be oft crowing, and busie in scratching the earth to finde out wormes & other food for his Hennes.

Now for the Henne, if she be a good one, shee should Of the Henner choyse & shape not differ much from the nature of the Cock, but be valiant,

liant, vigilant, and laborious both for her selfe and her Chickens. In shape the biggest and largest are the best, every proportion answering these before described of the Cock, onely in stead of her Combe she should haue vpon her crowne a high thicke tuft of feathers: to haue many & strong clawes is good, but to want hinder clawes is better, for they oft breake the Eggs, & such Hens sometimes proue vnnatural: it is not good to chuse a crowing Hen, for they are neither good breeders nor good layers. If you chuse Hens to sit, chuse the elder, for they be constant, and will sit out their times, and if you will chuse Hens to lay, chuse the youngest, for they are lusty and prone to the act of ingendring, but for neither purpose chuse a fat Hen, for if you set her, she wil forsake her nest, and if you keepe her to lay, she will lay her Eggs without shels. Besides, a fat Hen will waxe slothfull, and neither delight in the one nor in the other Act of nature, such Hens then are euer fitter for the dish then the hen-house.

Of setting
Hennes.

The best time to set Hens to haue the best, largest, and most kindly Chickens, is in February, in the increase of the Moone, so that she may hatch or disclose her Chickens in the increase of the next new Moone, being in March, for one brood of March chickens, is worth three broods of any other: you may set Hens from March till October, and haue good Chickens, but not after by any meanes, for the Winter is a great enemy to their breeding. A Henne doth sit twenty one dayes iustly, and then hatcheth, but Peahens, Tinkles, Geese, Ducks, and other water-fowle sit thirty: so that if you set your hen, as you may doe vpon any of their egges, you must set her vpon them nine dayes before you set her vpon her owne. A Hen wil couer nine egges wel, and that is the most, in y^e rule, she should couer, but vpon what number

loouer

sooner you set her, let it be odde, for so the egges will lie
 round; close, and in even proportion together: It is good
 when you lay your Egges first vnder your Hennes, to
 marke the vpper side of them, and then to watch the
 Hen, to see if she busie herselfe to turne them from the
 one side to the other, which if you finde she doeth not,
 then when she riseth from her egges, to feed or bathe her
 selfe, you must supply that office, and turne every Egge
 your selfe, and attende your rookerie of so much the lesse
 reckoning for the vse of brooding: be sure that the egges
 which you lay vnder her, be new and sound, which you
 may know by their heavinesse, fulnes, and cleerenesse,

Choyse of
 Egges.

Now, for helping a Henne to hatch her Egges or do-
 ing that which should be her office, it is vnecessarie,
 and shall be much better to be forborne then any way
 vsed; or to make doubt of bringing forth, or to thinke
 the Henne sitteth too long (as many foolish curious
 house-wiues doe) if you be sure you set her vpon sound
 Egges, is a frivoleus, but if you set her vpon vnfound
 Egges, then blame y our selfe, both of the losse and in-
 iury done to the Henne in her losse of labour. A Henne
 will be a good sitter from the second yeare of her lay-
 ing to the fift, but hardly any longer: you shall observe
 ever when your Hen riseth from her nest, to haue meate
 and water ready for her, lest straying to farre to seeke
 her foode, she let her Egges coole too much, which is
 very hurtfull. In her absence you shall stirre vp the straw
 of her nest, and make it soft and handsome, and lay the
 Egges in order, as she left them: doe not in the electi-
 on of your Egges, chuse those which are monstrous

great,

great, for they many times haue two yolkes, and though some write, that such Eggs will bring out two Chickens, yet they are deceiued, for if they bring forth two, they are commonly most abortiue and monstrous. To perfume the nest with Brimstone is good, but with Rosemary is much better. To let Hens in the winter time in stowes or cuens is of no vse with vs in England, and though they may by that means bring forth, yet will the Chickens be neuer good nor profitable, but like the planting of Lemon and Pomegranate trees, the fruit will come a great deale short of the charges. When your Hen at any time is absent from her nest, you must haue great care to see that the Cock come not to sit vpon the Eggs, (as he will offer to doe) for he will endanger to breake them, and make her loue her nest worse.

Of Chickens.

As soone as your Chickens be hatcht, if any be weaker then other, you shall lap them in Wooll, and let them haue the ayre of the fire, and it will strengthen them; to perfume them with a little Rosemary is very whole some also; and thus you may in a Siue keepe the first hatcht Chickens till the rest be disclosed (for Chickens would haue no meate for two dayes) & some shels being harder then other, they will take so much distance of time in opening: yet vnlesse the Chickens be weak, or the Hen rude, it is not amisse to let them alone vnder her, for she will nourish them most kindly: after two dayes is past, the first meate you giue them should be very small Oatemeale, some drinke and some sleepe in Milke, or else fine wheat bread crummes, and after they haue got strength, then Curds, Cheese parings, white bread crusts soak'd in Milke or drinke, Barley meale or wheate bread scalded, or any such like soft meate that is small, and will easily be diuided. It is good to keepe
Chickes

Chickes one fortnight in the house, and after to suffer them to goe abroad with the Henne to worme, for that is very wholelome, to choppe greene *Chyues* amongst your chickens meate, wil preserue them from the Rye, and other diseases in the head; neither must you at any time let your chickens want Water, for if they be forc'd to drink in puddles, it will breed the Pippe: also, to feed yppon *Tares*, *Darnell*, or *Cockell*, is very dangerous for young chickens.

You may by these foods before said, feed chickens very fat vnder their dams: but if you will haue fat cram'd chickens, you shal coope them vp when the Dam forsaketh them, and the best crams for them is whearmale and milke, made into dough, and then the crammes steeped in milke, and so thrust downe their throates, but in any case, let the crams be small, and wel wet for choaking. Fourteene daies will feed a chicken sufficiently: and thus much briefly for your breed.

Of feeding & cramming Chickens.

Now, because Egges of themselves are a singular profit: you shall vnderstand, that the best way to preserue or keep them long, is, as some think, to lay them in good Straw, and couer them close, but that is too cold, and besides wil make them musty: others wil lay them in Bran, but that is too hot, and will make them putrifie: and others wil lay them in Salt, but that makes them waste and diminish: the best way then to keepe them most sweet, most sound, and most full, is only to keep them in a heape of old Malt, close, and wel couered all ouer.

Of preseruing Egges.

You shal gather your Egges vp once a day, and leaue in the nest but the best-Egge, and no more; and that would euer be in the after-roome, when you haue seene euery Henne come from her nest seuerally: some Hens will

Of gathering Egges.

will by their cackling tel you when they haue layd, but some will lay mure, therefore you must let your owne eye be your instructor.

Of the Capon,
when to carue
him.

Now, touching the *Capon*, which is the guele Cocke-chicken, you shall vnderstand, that the best time to carue or guele him, is as soone as the Dama hath left them, (if the stores be come downe) or else as soone as they begin to crow: for the art of caruing it selfe, it is both common and easie, and much sooner to be learned by seeing one carued, then by any demonstration in writing.

A Capon to
lead chickens.

These Capons are of two vses: the one is, to lead chickens, Ducklings, young Turkeys, Peahens, Phelants and Partridges, which he wil do altoether, both naturally and kindly, and through largeness of his body wil brood or couer easily thirty or thirty and fve; he wil lead them forth safely, and defend them against Kites or Buzzards, more better then the Hens; therefore the way to make him to take vnto them is, with a fine small Briar, or else sharpe Nettles at night, to beate and sting al his Breast and neather parts, and then in the darke to seate the Chickens vnder him, whose warmth taketh away his smart, hee will fall much in loue with them, and whensoever he proueth vnkind, you must sting, or beat him againe, and this wil make him he wil neuer forsake them.

Of feeding or
cramming Capons.

The other vse of Capons is, to feed for the Dish, as eyther at the Barne-doores, with craps of corne and the chawings of Pulse, or else in Pens in the house, by cramming them, which is the most dainty. The best way then to cramme a Capon (setting all strange inuentions apart) is to take Barley-meale, reasonably sifted, and mixing it with new milke, make it into a good stiffe dough; then make it into long crams, biggest in the midst, and smal
at

at both Ends, and then Wetting them in luke-warme milke, giue the Capon a full gorgefull thereof three times a day Morning, Noone, and night, and he wil in a fortnight or three weekes, be as fat as any man need to cate.

As for mixing their crammes with sweet Worce, Hogges-grease, or Sallet Oyle, they are by Experience found to breed loath in the Birds, and not to feed at all, o, ely keepe this Obseruation, not to giue your Capon new meate vntill the first be put ouer; and if you finde your Capon something hard of digestion, then you shall sift your meale finer, for the finer your meale is, the sooner it wil passe through their bodies. And thus much for the Capon. Now for their infirmities, they follow in order.

CHAP. 2.

Of the Pippe in Poultry.

THe Pippe is a white thin scale, growing on the tippe of the tongue, and will make poultry that they cannot feede: it is easie to be discerned, and proceedeth generally from drinking puddle water, from want of water, or from eating filthy meate. The cure is, to pull off the scale with your nayle, and then rub the tongue with salt.

The Cure.

CHAP. 3.

Of the Roupp in Poultry.

THe Roupp is a filthy bue or swelling on the Rump of poultry, and wil corrupt the whole body. It is ordinarily known by the staring and turning back-wards of the feather. The cure is, to pull away the feathers, and opening the sore to discharge out the Core, and then wash the place with salt and water, or with Brim, and it healeth.

The Cure.

CHAP. 4.

Of the Fluxe in Poultry.

The Cure:

THe fluxe in Poultry commeth with eating too much moist meate. The cure is, to giue them pease-bran scalded, and it wil stay them.

CHAP. 5.

Of stopping in the belly.

Stopping in the bellies of Poultry. is contrary to the fluxe, so that they cannot mate: therefore, you shal annoint their vents, and then giue them either smal bits of bread, or corne steeped in mans vrine.

CHAP. 6.

Of Lice in Poultry.

If your Poultry be much troubled with Lice, as it is a common infirmity, proceeding from corrupt food, or want of bathing in sand, ashes, or such like: you shall take pepper small beaten, and mixing it with warme water, wash your poultry therein, and it wil kill all sorts of vermine.

CHAP. 7.

Of stinging with venomous wormes.

If your poultry be stung with any venomous thing, as you may perceiue by their lowring and swelling, you shal then annoint them with Rew and Butter mixt together, and it helpeth.

CHAP. 8.

Of sore eyes in Poultry.

If your poultry haue sore eyes, you shall take a leafe or two of ground-iiue, and chawing it well in your mouth, sucke out the iuyce, and spit it into the sore Eye, and it wil most assuredly heale it, as it hath bin often tried.

CHAP.

CHAP. 9.

Of Hennes that Crow.

IF your Hennes crow, which is an ill signe and unnaturall; you shall pull their wings, and giue her to eate cyther Barley scorched, or smal wheate, and keep her close from other Poultry.

CHAP. 10.

Of Hens that eate their Egges.

IF your Hen will eate her Egges, you shall onely lay for her nest egge a piece of chalke cut like an egge, at which oft pecking and loosing her labour, she wil refraine the euill.

CHAP. 11.

Of keeping a Henne from sisting.

IF you would not haue your Henne sit, you shall bathe her oft in cold water, & thrust a smal feather through her nostrils.

CHAP. 12.

Of making hennes lay soone and oft.

IF you feede your Hens often with roasts taken out of Ale, with Barley boyld, or speked fitches, they will lay soone, oft, and all the Winter.

CHAP. 13.

Of making Hennes leane.

BEcause fat hennes commonly either lay their Egges without shells, or at the best hand lay very small Egges: to keepe them leane, and in good plight for laying, you shall mixe both their meate and water with the powder of rishheard, chalke, or elle saues, twice or thrice a Weeke.

CHAP. 14.

Of the Crow-trodden.

IF your Henne be trodden with a carrion Crow, or Rooke, as oft they are, it is mortal and incurable, and you shal know it, by the staring vp of her feathers, and hanging of her wings, there is no way with her then but presently to kill her.

CHAP. 15.

Of the Hen-house, and the scituation.

NOW for as much as no Poultry can be kept eyther in health or safety abroad, but must of force be housed, you shal vnderstand that your Henne-house would be large and spacious, with somewhat a high Roofe, the wals strong, both to keepe out thieues and vermine, the windowes vpon the Sunne rising, strongly lathed, and close shuts inward, round about the inside of the wals vpon the ground would be built large pens of three foote high, for Geese, Duckes, and great fowle to sit in. Neste to the eawings of the house would be long Pearches, reaching from one side of the house to the other, on which should sit your Cockes, Hennes, Capons, and Turkes, each on severall Pearches, as they are disposed: at another side of the house in that part which is darkest, ouer the ground pens, would be fixed hampers full of straw for nests, in which you Hens shal lay their egges; but when they sit to bring forth Chickens, then let them sit on the ground, for otherwise it is dangerous: let there be pins stricken into the Wals, so that your Poutry may climbe to their Pearches with ease: let the floore by no meanes be paved, but of earth, smooth and easie: let the smaller fowle haue a hole at one end of the house made to come in and out at, when they please, or else they will seeke roust in other places, and for the greater fowle the

doore

doore may be opened Euening and morning; this house would be placed eyther neare some Kitchen, Brewhouse or else some Kilne, where it may haue aire of the fire, & be perfumed with smoake, which to Pullen is delightful and wholesome. And thus much of the Coeke, Henne, Capon, and Chicken.

CHAP. 16.

Of Geese, their nature, choise, and how to breede them.

Geese, are a fowle of great profit many waies, as first for foode, next for their feathers, and lastly for their Grease. They are held of Husband. men to be fowle of two liues; because they liue both on land and water: and therefore all men must vnderstand, that except he haue eyther Pond or Streame, he can neuer keepe Geese well. They are so watchfull and carefull ouer themselves that they will preuent most dangers: Grasse also they must necessarily haue, and the worst, & that which is the most vselesse is the best, as that which is moorish, rotten, and vsauoury for cattle. To good grasse they are a great enemy, for their dung and treading will putrifie it, and make it worse then barren.

Now for the choise of Geese, the largest is the best, and the colour would be white or gray, all of one paire, The choise of Geese. for pyde are not so profitable, and blacke are worse: your Gander would be knauish and hardy, for hee will defend his Goslings the better.

Now for the laying of Egges, a Goose beginneth to lay in the Spring, and she that layeth earliest is euer the best Goose, for she may haue a second hatch. Geese will lay twelue, and some sixteene egges: some will lay more, but it is seldome, and they cannot be all well couered: you shal know when your Goose will lay, by her carry-
ing

The ordering
of Goslings.

Of Greene
Geese and their
fading.

Of Ganders.

ing of straw vp and downe in her mouth, and fastening it abroad; and you shal know when she wil sit by her continuing on the Nest stil after shee hath layd. You must set a Goose vppon her owne Egges, for shee wil hardly or vnkindly sit on another Gooses egges, as some imagine, but it is not euer certayne. You shal in her straw when you set her, mixe Nettles roots for it is good for the Goslings: thirty dayes is the full time that a Goose sitteth, but if the Weather be faire and warme, she wil hatch three, or foure daies sooner: euer when the Goose riseth from the Nest, you shal giue her meate, as skegge Oates, and Branne scalded, and giue her leaue to bathe in the Water. After she hath hatched her Goslings, you shal keepe them in the house tenne or twelue dayes, and feed them with curds, scalded chippings, or Barley meale in milke knodden and broken, also ground Malt is exceeding good, or any Branne that is scalded in water, milke, or tappings of drinke. After they haue got a little strength, you may let them goe abroad with a keeper five or sixe houres in a day, and let the damme at her pleasure. Ince them into the water; then bring them in, and put them vp, and thus order them till they be able to defend themselves from vermine. After a Gosling is a moneth or fixe weekes old, you may put it vp to feede for a greene Goose, and it wil be perfectly fed in another moneth following: and to feed them, there is no meate better then skegge oates boyld, and giue plenty thereof thrice a day, Morning, Noone, and Night, with good store of milke, or milke and water mixt together to drinke.

Now you shal vnderstand one Gander wil serue wel five Geese, and to haue not aboue forty Geese in a flocke is best, for to haue more is both hurtful and troublesome.

Now

Now for the fattening of elder Geese which are those which are five or sixe months old, you shal vnderstand that after they haue beene in the stubble fields, and during the time of Haruest got into good flesh, you shal then chuse out such Geese as you will feede, and put them in several pens which are close and darke, and there feede them thrice a day with good store of oats, or spelted Beanes, and give them to drinke water and Barley-meale mixt together, which must euermore stand before them, this will in three weekes feed a Goose so fat as is needful.

Fattening of elder Geese.

Now lastly, for the gathering of a Gooses feathers, you shal vnderstand, that howloever some Writers aduise you for a needlesse profit to pul your Goose twice a yeare, March and August: yet certainly it is very rough and ill: for first, by disabling the flight of the Goose, you make her subiect to the cruelty of the Foxe, and other rauenous Beasts: and by vncloathing her in VVinter, you strike that cold into her body, which kills her very suddainly, therefore it is best to stay til moulting time, or til you kil her, and then you may employ all her Feathers at your pleasure, eyther for Beds, Fletchers, or Scriveners.

Of gathering Geese feathers.

For the diseases and infirmities in Geese, the most and worst they are subiect vnto, is the *Gargill*; which is a mortal or deadly stopping of the head. And the ordinary and certayne cure is, to take three or foure cloues of *Garlicke*, and beating them in a mortar with sweete *Butter*, make little long bals thereof, and giue two or three of them to the Goose, fasting, and then shut her vp for two houres after.

Of the Gargill in Geese.

The Cure.

CHAP.

CHAP. 17.

Of Turkies, their nature, use, increase, and breeding.

Turkies, howsoever by some Writers they are held deuourers of corne, strayers abroad, euer puling for meat, and many such like tained troubles, as if they were vtterly vnprofitable, yet it is certaine they are most delicate, either in Paste, or from the Spit, and being fat, far exceeding any other house-foule whatsoeuer: nay, they are kept with more ease and lesse cost: for they will take more paines for their foode then any other Bird, only they are enemies to a garden, and from thence must euer be kept. They are when they are young very tender to bring vp, both because they haue a straying nature in themselves, and the dammes are so negligent that whilst she hath one following her, she neuer respecteth the rest. Therefore they must haue a Vigilant keeper to attend them till they can shift for themselves, and then they will flock together, and seldome be parted. Till you fat them you need not take care for food for them; they loue to Roost in trees or other high places.

Of the choyse
of the Turkey.
Cocke.

Now for your choyse of such as you would breede on; your Turkey-cocke would not be aboue two yeare old at most, be sure that he be louing to the Chickens, and for your Hen, she wil lay til she be fve yeares old and vpward. Your Turkey cocke would be a bird large, stout, proud, and majesticall, for when he walketh dejected, he is neuer good treader.

Of the Turkey
hen, her sitting.

The Turkey henne, if she be not preuented wil lay abroad in secret places, therefore you must watch her, and bring her into your Henne-house, and there compel her to lay. They beginne to lay in *March*, and wil sit in *April*, and eleuen Egges or thirteene is the most they should

should couer: they hatch euer betweene five and twenty, & thirty dayes. When they haue hatcht their broods be sure to keep the Chicks warme, for the least colds kills them, and feed them either with curds, or greene freish cheese cut in smal pcees. Lett their drinke be new milke, or milke and Water: you must be careful to feed them oft; for the Turky henne wil not like the House-henne cal her Chickens to feede them. When your Chicks haue got strength, you shall feed them abroad in some close walled grasse plat, where they cannot stray, or else euer be at charge of a Keeper. The dew is most hurtfull vnto them, therefore you must house them at night, and let them abroad after Sunne rise in the morning.

Now for the fating of Turkies, sodden Barly is excellent, or sodden oates for the first fortnight, and then for another fortnight, cramme them in all sorts as you cramme your Capon, and they will be fat beyond measure. Now for their infirmities: when they are at liberty, they are such good Physitions for themselves, that they will neuer trouble their owners, but being coopd vp, you must cure them as is before described for Pullen. Their Egges are exceeding wholesome to eate, and restore nature decayed wonderfully.

Of feeding
Turkies.

CHAP. 18.

Of the Duck, and such water Fowles.

THe tame Duck is an exceeding necessary fowle for the Husbandmans yard, for she asketh no charge in keeping, but liueth of corne lost, or other things of little profit. She is once in a yeare a very great layer of Egges, and when she sitteth she craues both attendance and feeding: for being restrayned from seeking her food, she must be helped with a little barley, or other over-cha-
uing

ming of corne, such as else you would give vnto Swine, as for her sitting, hatching and feeding of her Ducklings it is in all points to be obserued in such manner as you did before with the Goose, onely after they are abroad they will shift better for their food then Gollings will. For the fattening of Ducks or Ducklings, you may do it in three weekes, by giuing them any kinde of Pulle or Graine, and good store of water.

Of Wilde.

Ducks, and
their ordering.

If you will preserve wilde Ducks, you must wall in a little peece of ground, in which is some little Pond or Spring, & couer the top of it all ouer with a strong Net. the Pond must be set with many tufts of Oziers, & haue many secret holes and creekes in, for that wil make them delight and feed though imprisoned. The wilde Duck when she layeth, will steale from the Drake, & hide her nest, for he else will suck the Eggs. When she hath hatched she is most carefull to nourish them, and needeth no attendance more then meate, which would be giuen fresh twice a day, as scalded Bran, oates or Fitches. The house Hen will hatch wilde Ducks Eggs, and the meate will be much the better, yet every time they goe into the water, they are in danger of the Kite, because the Hen cannot guard them, in the same manner as you nourish wilde Ducks, so you may nourish Teiles, Widgens, Sheldrakes or greene Plovers.

CHAP. 19. Of Swannes, and their feeding.

Aspeake of the breeding of Swannes is needlesse, because they can better order themselves in that business then any man can direct them, onely where they build their Nests, you shall suffer them to remaine vndisturbed, and it will be sufficient: but for the feeding of them for the dish, you shall feed your Cygnets in all sorts

sorts as you feed your Geese, & they will be thorow fat in seauen or eight weekes, ei her coop't vp in the house, or else walking abroad in some priuate Court; but if you would haue them fat in shorter space, then you shall feed them in some pond, hedg'd or payl'd in for the purpose, hauing a little dry ground left where they may sit and prune themselves, and you may place two troughes, one full of Barley & Water, the other full of old dride Malt, on which they may feed at their pleasure, and thus doing, the will be fat in lesse then foure weekes: for by this meanes a Swanne keepeth himselfe neate and cleane, who being a much defiled bird, liueth in drie places so vncleane, that they cannot prosper, vnlesse his attendee bee diligent to dresse and trimme his walke euery houre.

CHAP. 20.

Of the Peacocks, and Peahens, their increase and ordering.

PEACOCKES, howsoeuer our old writers are pleased to deceiue themselves in their praises, are birds more to delight the eye by looking on them, then for any particular profit; the best commodity rising from them, being the cleansing & keeping of the yard free from venemous things, as Toades, Newtes, and such like, which is their daily food: whence it comes, that their flesh is very vnhole some, and vsed in great banquet more for the rarenesse then the nourishment, for it is most certaine, roste a Peacocke or Peahen neuer so dry, then set it vp, and looke on it the next day, and it will be bloud-rawe, as if it had not beene roasted at all.

The Peahen loues to lay her Egges abroad in bushes and hedges, where the Cocke may not find them, for if he do, he will breake them; therefore as soone as she begins

gins to lay, & petale her from the Cocke, and howe hee
 till she haue brought forth her young, and that the crop
 pet of feathers begin to rise at their foreheades, and then
 tyme them abroad, and the Cocke will loose them, but
 not before. A Peahen sits iust thirty dayes, & in her sit-
 ting any graine with water, is food good enough: before
 your Chickens goe abroad, you shall feed them with
 fresh Greene Cheefe, and Barly-Meale, with water; but
 after they goe abroad, the Dam will provide for them.
 The best time to set a Peahen, is at the beginning of
 the Moone, and if you set Hen-Egs amongst her Egs, she
 wil nourish both equally. These Pea-chickens are very
 tender, and the least cold doth kill them: therefore you
 must haue care to keepe them warme, & not to let them
 goe abroad but when the Sun-shineth. Now for the
 feeding of them, it is a labour you may well saue for if
 they goe in a place where there is any corne stirring,
 they will haue part, and being meate which is seldome
 or neuer eaten, it mattereth not so much for their sit-
 ting.

Chapter 21.

Of the tame Pigeon, or rough footed.

THe tame rough footed Pidgeon differs not much
 from the white Pidgeon, onely they are somewhat
 bigger, and more familiar, and apt to be tame; they com-
 monly bring forth about one paire of Pidgeons a
 time, & those which are the best of body are ever the best
 breeders. They must haue their roomes & boxes made
 cleane once a week, for they delight much in neatnesse,
 & if the walls be outwardly whited or painted, they love
 it the better. for they delight much in faire buildings.
 They will bring forth their young ones once a month,
 if they be well paired, & if they be well paired they will

neuer be diuided. The Cocke is a very louing and naturall Bird, both to his Hen and the young ones, and will sit the Egges whilest the Hen seedeth: as the Henne sits whilest he seedeth: he will also feed the young with as much painefulnesse as the Dam doth, and is best pleased when he is brooding them. These kind of Pidgeons you shall feed with white Pease, Tares and good store of cleane water. In the roome where they lodge you shall euer haue a salt. Cat for them to peck on, & that which is gathered from Saltpeter is the best: also they would haue good store of dry Sand, Grauel and Pybbie, to bath and cleanse themselves withall, and about all things great care taken, that no vermin, or other Birds come into their Boxes, especially Sterlingses, and such like, which are great Eg-suckers. And thus much of the tame Pidgeon.

CHAP. 22.

*Of nour. shing and fatting Hearnes,
Pacts, Gulls, and Bitters.*

HEARNES are nourished for two causes: either for Princes sports, to make traines for the entering their Hawkes, or else to furnish out the Table at great feasts: the manner of bringing them vp with least charge, is to take them out of their nests before they can flie, and put them into a large high Barne, where there is many high and grosse beames for them to perch on: then to haue on the floore diuers square boords with rings in them, and betweene euery boord which would be two yards square, to place round shallow tubs full of water; then to the boords you shall tye great gobbets of dogs flesh, cut from the bones, according to the number which you feede: and be sure to keepe the house sweet, and shift the water

water oft, onely the house must be made so that it may raine in now and then, in which the Hearne will take much delight. But if you feede her for the dish, then you sha'l feede them with Livers, and the intrailles of Beasts, and such like, cut in great gobbets, and this manner of feeding will also feede either Gull, Puet, or Bitter: but the Bitter is cuer best to be fed by the hand, because when you haue fed him you may tye his beake together, or he will cast vp his meate againe.

CHAP. 23.

Of feeding the Partridge, Pheasant and Quail.

THese three are the most daintiest of all other birds, and for the Pheasant or Partridge you may feed them both in one roome, where you may haue little boxes where they may runne and hide themselves in diuers corners of the roome, then in the midst you shall haue three wheat sheaues, two with their eares vpward, and one with the eares downward, & neere vnto them shallow Tubs with water, that the Fowle may pecke the wheat out of the eares, and drinke at their pleasures, and by this manner of feeding you shall haue them as fat as is possible: as for your Quailes, the best feeding there is in long flat shallow boxes, each boxe able to hold two or three dozen, the formost side being set with round pins so thicke that the Quail may doe no more but put out her head, then before that open side, shall stand one trough full of small chilter wheat, and another with water, & thus in one fortnight or three weekes you shall haue them exceeding fat.

CHAP. 24.

Of Gadwits, Knots, gray-Plover, or Curlewes.

For to feede any of these Fowles, which are esteemed of all other the daintiest and dearest, fine Chilter wheat

wheat and water giuen them thrice a day, Morning, Noone, and Night, will doe it very effectually; but if you intend, to haue them extraordinary and crammed fowle, then you shall take the finest drest wheate-meale, and mixing it with milke, make it into paste, and euer as you knead it, sprinkle into it the grains of smal chilter-wheat till the paste be fully mixt there with; then make little small crams thereof, and dipping them in water, giue to euery fowle according to his bignesse, and that his gorge be well filled: doe thus as oft as you shall finde their gorges empty, and in one fortnight they will be fed beyond measure. And with these crammes you may feede any fowle, of what kinde or nature soeuer.

CHAP. 25.

*Of feeding blacke-birds, Thrushes, Felfares,
or any small Birds whatsoeuer.*

TO feede these Birds, being taken old and wilde, it is good to haue some of their kindestame to mixe among them, and then putting them into great Cages of three or foure yards square, to haue diuers troughs placed therein, some filled with Heps & Hawes, some with Hempe-seede, some with Rape-seede, some with Lin-seede, and some with water, that the tame teaching the wilde to eate, and the wilde finding such chang and alteration of food they will in twelue or fourteene dayes grow exceeding fat and fit for the vse of the Kitchen.

The end of the Poultrye.

NOf



Of Hawkes.

CHAPTER I.

Of the generall Cures for all Diseases and infirmities in Hawkes, whether they be short-winged Hawkes, or long winged Hawkes: and first of Castings.



Hawkes, are diuided into two kinds, that is to say, short-winged Hawkes, as the Goshawke and her Tercell, the Sparrow Hawke and her Musket, and such like, whose Wings are shorter then their traines, and do belong to the Ostringer: and long-winged Hawkes, as the Faulcon-gentle, and her Tercell, the Gerfaulcon and Jerkin, the Lanner, Merlin, Hobby, and diuers others, which belong vnto Faulconers. Now, for as much as their infirmities, for the most part, proceed from the indiscretion of their gouernors, if they flie them out of season, before they be inseasoned and haue the fat, glut, and filthinesse of their bodies scoured and cleansed out, I thinke it not amisse first to speake of Hawkes castings, which are the naturallest and gentlest purges or scourings a Hawke can take, and doth the least offend the vital parts. Therefore you that know, that all Ostringers do esteeme plumage, and the soft feathers of small Birds, with some part of the skinne, to be the best casting a short-winged Hawke can take; and for the purging of her head, to make her tyer much vpon sheeps Rumpes, the fat cut away, and the bones well couered with Parcely. But for long-winged Hawkes, the best casting is fine Flannell, cut into square peeces of an inch and

and a halfe square, and all to iagged, and so giuen with a little bit of meate. By these castings you shall know the soundnesse & vnsoundnesse of your Hawke: for when she hath cast, you shall take vp the casting, which will be like a hard round pellet, somewhat long, and presse it betweene your fingers, and if you finde nothing but cleere water come from it, then it is a signe your Hawke is sound and lustie, if there come from it a yellowish or filthy matter, or if it stinke, it is a signe of rottennesse and diseate; but if it be greazy or slimy on the one side, then it is a signe the Hawke is full of grease inwardly, which is not broken nor dissolued: and then you shall giue her a scouring, which is a much stronger purgation, and of Scourings the gentlest, next casting, is to take foure or fife Pellets of the yellow roote of Selladine, well cleansed from filth, being as bigge as great Pease and giue them out of water early in a Morning, when the Hawke is fasting and it will cleanse her mightily. If you take these pellets of Selladine, and giue them out of the oyle of Roses, or out of the sirrup of Roses, it is a most excellent scouring also, onely it will for an houre or two make the Hawke somewhat sickith. If yee giue your Hawke a little *Aloes Cicutine*, as much as a Beane wrapt vp in her meate, it is a most loueraigne scouring, and doth not onely auoyde grease, but also killeth all sorts of wormes whatsoeuer.

Of Scourings.

If your Hawke by ouer-flying, or too soone flying, be heated and inflamed in her body, as they are much subiect thereto: you shall then to coole their bodies, giue them Stones. These Stones are very fine white pibbles, lying in the sands of grauelly rivers, the bignesse whereof you may chuse according to the bignesse of your Hawke, as some no bigger then a Beane, and

those be for *Merlins* or *Hebbies*; some as bigge as two Beanes, and they are for *Faulcons* gentle, *Lanners*, and such like; and some much bigger then they, which are for *Gerfaulcons*, or such like. And these *Stones* if they be full of crests and welts, they are the better, for the roughest stone is the best, so it be smooth and not greery. And you shall vnderstand that *Stones* are most proper for long-wing'd *Hawkes*, and the number which you shall giue at the most must neuer exceede fifteene, for seauen is a good number, so is nine or eleuen, according as you finde the *Hawkes* heate, more or lesse: and these *Stones* must euer be giuen out of faire water, hauing beene before very well pickt and trim'd from all durt or filthines. And thus much of *Hawkes* castings, *Scourings*, & *Stones*.

CHAP. 2.

Of Impostumes in Hawkes.

IF your *Hawke* haue any impostume rising vpon her, which is apparant to be seene, you shal take sweet *Rayfins*, and boyle them in *Wine*, and then crushing them, lay them warme to the sore, and it will both ripen and heale it: onely it shall be good to scoure your *Hawke* very well inwardly, for that will abate the fluxe of all euill humours.

CHAP. 3.

Of all sorts of sore eyes.

FOR any sore eye there is nothing better then to take the iuyce of ground-*Iure*, and drop it into the eye. But if any filme or web be growne before you vse this medicine, then you shall take *Ginger* finely scarft, and blow it into the eye, & it will breake the filme, then vse the iuyce of *Iure*, and it will weare it away.

CHAP.

CHAP. 4.
Of the Pantas in Hawkes.

THe Pantas is a stopping or shortnesse of winde in Hawkes. And the cure is, to giue her the scowring of *Selladine*, and the oyle of *Roses*, & then to wash her meat in the decoction of *Colts-foote*, and it will helpe her. The cure.

CHAP. 5.
Of casting the gorge.

THis is when a Hawke, either through meate which she cannot digest, or through surfet in feeding, casteth vp the meate which she hath eaten, which is most dangerous: And the onely way to cure her is to keepe her fasting, and to feede her with a very little at once of warme bloody meate, as not aboue halfe a Sparrow at a time, and be sure neuer to feed her againe till she haue indued the first. The Cure.

CHAP. 6.
Of all sorts of Wormes or Fylanders in Hawkes.

Wormes or Fylanders, which are a kinde of wormes in Hawkes, are either inward or outward: Inward, as in the guts or intrals, or outward, as in any ioynt or member: if they be inward, the scowring of *Aloes* is excellent to kill them; but if they be outward, then you shall bathe the place with the iuyce of the hearbe *Ameas* mixt with *Hony*.

CHAP. 7.
Of all swellings in Hawkes feete, and of the Pin in the foote.

FOr the Pinne in the sole of the Hawkes foote, or for any swelling vpon the foot, whether it be soft or hard, there is not any thing more soueraigne, then to bathe it in *Patch-grease* moulten and applied to exceeding hot, and

and then to fold a fine Cambricke rag dipt in the same grease about the sore.

CHAP. 8.

Of the breaking of a Pounce.

The Cure.

This is a very dangerous hurt in Hawkes, especially in Gerfaulcons; for if you shall breake or rite her Pounce, or out coape it so short that she bleed, though it be very little, yet it will indanger her life. The cure therefore is presently vpon the hurt with a hot wyar to seare it till the bloud steunch, and then to drop about it Pitch of Burgundy, and waxe mixt together, or for want thereof a little hard Marchants Waxe, and that will both heale it, and make the Pounce grow.

CHAP. 9.

Of bones broke or out of ioynt.

If your Hawke haue any bone broke or misplaced, you shall after you haue sear'd, bath it with the oyle of Mandrag, and Swallowes, mixt together, and then splent it, and in nine dayes it will be knit and haue gotten strength.

CHAP. 10.

Of inward bruising in Hawkes.

If your Hawke either by stooping amongst trees, or by the incounter of som fowle, get any inward bruise, which you shall know by the blacknes or bloodines of their mutes, you shall then annoynt her meate euery time you feede her with Sperma-Cete till her mutes be cleare againe, and let her meate be warme and bloudy.

CHAP. 11.

Of killing of Lice.

If your Hawke be troubled with lyce, which is a general infirmity, & apparant, for you shall see them creepe all ouer on the outside of her fethers if she stand but in the

the aire of the fire. You shall bath her all ouer in warme Water and Pepper small beaten, but be sure that the Water be not too hot, for that is dangerous, neither that it touch her eies.

CHAP. 12.

Of the Rye in Hawkes.

THis disease of the Rye in Hawkes proceedeth from two causes; the one is cold and poze in the head, the other is foule and most vncleane feeding, the Faulconer being negligent to teake & cleane his Hawkes beake and nares, but suffering the blood and blithnesse of meate to sticke and cleave thereunto. For indeede, the infirmitie is nothing else but a stopping vp of the nares, by means whereof the Hawke not being able to cast and auoide the corruption of her head, it turnes to putrefaction, and in short space kils the Hawke: and this disease is a great deale more incident to short-wing'd Hawkes then too long. The signes whereof are apparant by the stopping of the nares. The cure is, to let your Hawke tyer much vpon sinewie and bony meat, as the rumps of Mutton (the fat being taken away) or the Py-nions of the wings of fowle, either being well lapt in a good handfull of *Parseley* & forcing her to straine hard in the tearing of the same, and with much diligence to cleane and wash her beake cleane with water after her feeding, specially if her meat were warme and bloudy.

The Cure.

CHAP. 13.

Of the Frounce.

THe Frounce is a cankerous vicer in a Hawks mouth, got by ouer flying, or other inflammation proceeding from the inward parts; foule and vncleane food is also a great ingenderer of this disease. The signes are a loosenes in the Hawkes mouth, which sore will be fur'd and co-

The Cure.

uer'd ouer with white scurfe or such like firminesse; also if the vlcer be deepe and ill, the Hawke will winde and turne her head awrie, making her beake stand vp right: and the cure is to take *Allome*, and hauing beaten it to fine powder, mixe it with strong *vine-vinegar*, till it be somewhat thick, and then wash and rubbe the sore therewith, till it be raw, and that the scurfe be cleane taken away. Then take the iuyce of *Lolliam*, and the iuyce of *Radish*, and mixing it with *Salt*, annoynt the sore therewith, and in few dayes it will cure it.

CHAP. 14.

Of the Rhume.

The Cure.

THe Rhume is a continuall running or dropping at the Hawkes Nares, proceeding from a generall cold, or els from ouer-flying, and then a sodaine cold taken thereupon: it stoppeth the head, and breeds much corruption therein, and the signes are the dropping before said, and a generall heavinesse, and sometimes a swelling of the head. The cure is, to take the iuyce of *Beets*, and squirt it oft into the Hawkes nares. Then when you feed her, wash her meate in the iuyce of *Broomewort*, and it will quickly purge, and set her sound.

CHAP. 15.

Of the Formicas in Hawkes.

The Cure.

THe Formicas in Hawkes is a hard horne growing vpon the beake of a Hawke, ingendered by a poysonous and cankerous worme, which fretting the skin and tender yellow welt between the head and the beake, occasioneth that hard horne or excreffion to grow and offend the bird. The signe is the apparant sight of the horn. And the cure is to take a litle of a *Buls gall*, and beating it with *Aloes*, annoynt the Hawks beake therewith Morning

ning and Euening, and it will in very few daies take the horne away.

CHAP. 16.
Of the Fistula in Hawkes.

THe Fistula in Hawkes is a cankerous hollow vicer in any part of a Hawkes body, as it is in men, beasts, or any other creature: the signes are a continuall mattering or running of the sore, and a thinne sharpe water like lie, which as it fals from the same will fret the sound parts as it goeth. The cure is with a fine small wyar, little stronger then a Virginal wyar, and wrapt close about with a soft fleaued filke. and the poynt blunt and soft, to search the hollownes & crookednes of the vicer, which the pliantnesse of the wyar will easily do, and then hauing found out the bottome thereof, draw forth the wyar, and according to the bignesse of the Orifice make a tent of fine lint being wet, which may likewise bend as the wyar did, and be within a very little as long as the vicer is deepe, for to tent it to the full length is ill, and will rather increase then diminish the Fistula: and therefore euer as the Fistula heales, you must take the tent shorter and shorter. But to the purpose, when you haue made your tent fit, you shall first take strong *Allome* water, and with a small teridge, squirt the sore three or foure times therewith, for that will cleanse, drie, and scoure euery hollownesse in the vicer: then take the tent and annoynt it with the iuyce of the hearbe *Roberre*, *Vinegar*, and *Allome* mixt together, and it will drie vp the sore.

The Cure

CHAP. 17.
Of the priue euill in Hawkes.

THe priue euill in Hawkes is a secret heart sicknesse procured either by ouer-flying, corrupt food, cold,
or

The Cure.

or other disorderly keeping, but most especially for want of Stones or casting in the due season: the signes are heauinesse of head, and countenance, euill enduing of her meate, and foule black mutings. The cure is to take Morning & Euening a good piece of a warme *Sheepes* heart, and steeping it either in new *Asses Milke*, or new *Goats Milke*, or for want of both, the new *Milk* of a red Cow, with the same to feede your Hawke till you see her strength and lust recovered.

CHAP. 18.

Of wounds in Hawkes.

The Cure.

HAwkes by the crosse incounters of fowles, especially the Heron, by stooping amongst Bushes, Thornes, Trees, and by diuers such accidents, doe many times catch sore & most grieuous wounds: the signes whereof are the outward apparance of the same. And the cure is, if they be long and deepe, and in places that you may conveniently, first to stich them vp, and then to raine them vp with a little ordinary *Balsamum*, and it is a present remedy. But if it be in such a place as you cannot come to stich it vp, you shal then onely take a little *Lint*, and dip it in the iuyce of the hearbe called *Munseare*, & apply it to the sore, and it will in short space heale it. But if it be in such a place as you can by no meanes bind any thing thereunto, you shall then onely annoynt or bath the place with the aforesaid iuyce, and it will heale and dry vp the same in very short time; the iuyce of the Greene hearbe, called with vs, *English Tobacco*, will likewise doe the same: for it hath a very speedy course in healing and cleansing, as hath beene approved by diuers of the best Faulconers of this kingdom, & other nations.

CHAP.

CHAP. 19. *Of the Apoplexie, or falling euill in Hawkes.*

THe Apoplexy or falling euill in Hawkes, is a certaine vertigo or dizinesse of the braine, proceeding from the oppression of cold humors, which doe for a certaine space numbe, & as it were mortifie the senses: the signes are a sodaine turning vp the Hawkes head, and falling from her perch without bating, but onely with a generall trembling ouer all the body, and lying so, as it were, in a trance a little space, shee presently recouereth, and riseth vp againe, but is sicke and heauy many houres after. The cure therefore is, to gather the hearbe *Asserion*, when the Moone is in the Waine, and in the signe *Vingo*, and taking the iuyce thereof to wash your Hawkes meat therein, and to feed her, and it hath beene found a most soueraigne medicine.

CHAP. 20. *Of the purging of Hawkes.*

THere is nothing more needfull to Hawkes then purgations and cleansings; for they are much subiect to fat and foulenesse of body inwardly, and their exercise being much and violent, if there be neglect, and that their glut be not taken away, it will breede sicknesse and death; therefore it is the part of euery skilfull Faulconer to vnderstand how, & when to purge his Hawke, which is generally euer before shee be brought to flying: and the most viuallest season for the same, is before the beginning of *Autumne*; for commonly knowing-Gentlemen will not fly at the Partridge till Corne be from the ground; and if he prepare for the Riuer early, hee will likewise begin about that season: the best purgation then that you can giue your Hawke, is *Aloes Cicassine*, wrapt vp in warme meate, the quantitie of a French Pease,

Pease, & so giuen the Hawke to eat euer the next morning after she hath flowne at any traine, or taken other exercise, whereby she might breake or dissolue the grease within her.

CHAP. 21.

For a Hawke that cannot mute.

IF your Hawke cannot mute, as it is a common infirmitie which happeneth vnto them, you shall take the leane of Porke, being newly kild, whilst it is warme, to the quantitie of two Wall-nuts, and lapping a little *Aloes* therein, giue it to the Hawke to eat, & it will presently helpe her. There be diuers good Faulconers, in this case, which will take the roots of *Selandine*, and hauing cleansed it, and cut it into little square pieces as big as Pease, doe steepe it in the Oyle of Roses, and so make the Hawke swallow downe three or foure of them: and sure this is very good and whole some, onely it will make the Hawke exceeding sicke for two or three houres after. Neither must the Hawke be in any weake state of body, when this latter medicine is giuen her. Also, you must obserue to keepe your hawke at those times exceeding warme, and much on your fist, & to fee de her most with warme Birds, least otherwise you clung and dry vp her intrailles too much, which is both dangerous and mortall.

CHAP. 22.

The assuredst signe to know when a Hawke is sicke.

HAwkes are generally of such a stout, strong, and vnyielding nature, that they will many times couer and conceale their sickneses so long til they be growne to that extremitie, that no helpe of Physicke or other knowledge can auail for their saluities: for when the countenance, or decay of stomacke, which are the ordinary

nary outward faces of infirmities, appeare, then commonly is the disease past remedy: therefore to prevent that euill, and to know sicknesse whilest it may be cured, you shall take your Hawke, and turning vp her traine, if you see that her tuell or fundament either swel- leth or looketh red, or if her eyes or nares likewise be of a fiery complexion, it is a most infallible signe that the Hawke is sicke, and much out of temper.

CHAP. 23.

Of the Fever in Hawkes.

HAwkes are as much subiect to Feuers, as any crea- tures whatsoeuer, and for the most part they pro- ceede from ouer-flying, or other extraordinary heates, mixt with sodaine coldes, giuen them by the negligence of vnskilfull keepers: and the cure is, to set her in a coole place, vpon a pearch wrapt about with wet cloathes, and feed her oft with a little at a time of Chickens flesh, stee- ped in water, wherein hath bene soaked Cowcumber seedes. But if you finde by the stopping of her nares or head, that she is offended more with cold then heat, then you shall set her in a warme place, and feed her with the bloody flesh of Pigeons, washt either in white wine, or in water, wherein hath bene boyled either Sage, Mario- ram, or Camomill.

The cure.

CHAP. 24.

To helpe a Hawke that cannot digest or indewe her Meate.

IF your Hawke be hard of digestion, and neither can turne it ouer, nor empty her panell, which is very often seene, you shall then take the heart of a Frog, and thrust it downe into her throat, and pull it backe againe by a thread fastened therew to once or twice sodainely, and it will either make her endew or cast her gorge presently.

CHAP.

CHAP. 25.

Of the Gout in Hawkes.

HAwkes, especially those which are free and strong strikers, are infinitely subiect to the Gout, which is a swelling, knotting, and contracting of a Hawkes feet. The cure thereof is, to take two or three drops of blood from her thy' veine, a little aboue her knee, and then annoynt her feet with the iuyce of the hearbe *Hollyhocke*, and let all her Pearch be annointed also with *Tallow*, & the iuyce of that hearb mixt together. Now, if this disease (as oft it happeneth) be in a Hawkes wing, then you shall take two or three drops of blood from the veine vnder her wing, and then annoint the pinions and inside thereof with *Ynguentum de Althea*, made very warme, which you may buy of euery Potheary.

The cure.

CHAP. 26.

Of the staunching of blood.

IT is a knowne experience amongst the best Faulconers, that if the Gerfaulcon shall but loose two or three drops of blood, it is mortall, and the Hawke will die suddenly after, which to preuent, if the blood proceede from any pounce, which is most ordinarie, then vpon the instant hurt, you shall take a little hard Merchants waxe, and drop it vpon the soare, and it will presently stop it; if it be vpon any other part of the Hawkes body, you shall clapt hereunto a little of the soft Downe of a Hare, and it will immediately stanch it; and without these two things a good Faulconer should neuer goe, for they are to be vied in a moment. And thus much of the Hawke, and her diseases.

The end of the Hawke.

Of

Of Bees.

CHAP. I.

Of the nature, ordering, and preservation of Bees.



Fall the creatures which are behoueful
 for the vſe of man, there is none more
 neceſſary, wholeſome, or more profit-
 able then the Bee, nor any leſſe trou-
 bleſome, or leſſe chargeable. To ſpeak
 then firſt of the nature of Bees, it is a
 creature gentle, louing, & familiar about the man, which
 hath the ordering of them, ſo he come neate, ſweet, and
 cleanly amongſt them: otherwiſe, if he haue ſtrong, and
 ill-ſmelling fauours about him, they are curſt and malici-
 ous, and wil ſting ſpitefully: they are exceeding induſtri-
 ous and much giuen to labor, they haue a kind of govern-
 ment amongſt themſelues, as it were a wel ordered com-
 mon-weakh: euery one obeying & following their king
 or commander, whoſe voice (if you lay your eare to the
 Hiue) you ſhal diſtingiſh from the reſt, being louder and
 greater, and beating with a more ſolemn measure. They
 delight to lue amongſt the ſweeteſt hearbs, and flowers
 that may be, eſpecially Fennel, and Wal gilly-flowers,
 and therefore their beſt dwellings are in Gardens: and
 in theſe Gardens, or neere adioyning thereunto, wou'd
 be diuers Fruit trees growing, chiefly plumbe-trees, or
 peach-trees, in which, when they caſt, they may knit
 without taking any faire flight, or wandring to finde
 out their Reſt: this Garden alſo wou'd be wel fenced,
 that no Swine nor other cattle may come therein, as
 wel for ouerthrowing their Hives, as alſo for offending
 them

The nature of
Bees.

them with other ill-sauours. They are also very tender, and may by no meanes endure any cold : wherefore you must haue a great respect to haue their houses exceeding warme, close, and tight, both to keepe out the frosts and snowes, as also the wet and raine ; which if it once enter into the Hiue, it is a present destruction.

Of the Bee-
Hiue.

To speake then of the Bee-hiue, you shall know there be diuers opinions touching the same, according to the customes and natures of Countries ; for in the Champaine Countreyes, where there is very little store of woods, they make their Hiues of long Rye-straw, the routes being sowed together with Bryers ; and these Hiues are large and deepe, and euen proportioned like a *Sugar-loafe*, and crosse-bard within, with flat splints of wood, both aboue and vnder the middest part : in other Champain Countreyes, where there wanteth Rye-straw, they make them of Wheat-straw, as in the West Countreyes ; and these Hiues are of a good compasse, but very low and flat, which is naught : for a Hiue is euer better for his largenesse, and keepeth out rayne best, when it is sharpest. In the wood-Countreyes, they make them of clouen hassels, watteld aboue, broad splints of Ash, and so formed as before I said, like a *Sugar-loafe*. And these Hiues are of all other the best, so they be large and smooth within, for the straw-Hiue is subiect to breed Mice, and nothing destroyeth Bees sooner then they, yet you must be gouerned by your ability, and such thinges as the soyle affords.

Of the trim-
ming of the
Hiue.

Now for the Wood-Hiue, which is the best, you shall thus trimme and prepare it for your Bees : you shall first make a stiffe mortar of Lime and Cow-dung, mixed together, and then having crosse-baired the Hiue within, daube the outside of the Hiue with the mortar, at least

least three inches thicke, downe close vnto the stone, so that the least aire may not come in: then taking a Rye-sheafe, or Wheate-sheafe or two that is baltd and not thrashed, and chusing out the longest Strawes, bind the eares together in one lumpe, put it ouer the Hiue, and so as it were thatch it all ouer, and fixe it close to the Hiue with an old hoope, or garth, and this will keepe the Hiue inwardly as warme as may be: also before you lodge any Bee in your hiue, you shall perfume it with *Iuniper*, and rub it all within with *Fennell*, *Isape*, and *Time flowers*, and also all the stone vpon which the Hiue shall stand.

The placing
of Hiuers.

Now for the placing of your Hiuers, you shall take three long thicke stakes, cut smooth and plaine vpon the heads, and driue them into the earth triangularwise, so that they may be about two foot aboue the ground: then lay ouer them a broad smooth paving stone, which may extend euery way ouer the stakes about halfe a foot, and vpon the stone set your Hiue, being lesse in compasse then the stone by more then sixe inches euery way, and see the doore of your Hiue stand directly vpon the rising of the Morning Sunne, inclining a little vnto the Southward: and be sure to haue your Hiuers well sheltered from the North-winds, and generally from all tempestuous weathur: for which purpose if you haue sheads to draw ouer them in the winter, it is so much the better. And you shall place your Hiuers in orderly rows one before another, keeping cleane Allies betwene them euery way, so as ye may walke and view each by it selfe seuerally.

Now for the casting of your Bees, it is earlier or later in the yeare, according to the strength and goodnesse of the stocke, or the warmth of the weather. The vtall time for casting, is from the beginning of May, till the middle

The casting of
Bees, and orde-
ring of Swarms.

middle of Iuly: and in all that time you must haue a vigilant eye, or els some seruant to watch their rising, least they fly away, and knit in some obscure place farre from your knowledge. Yet if you please you may know which Hiuēs are ready to cast a night before they doe cast, by laying your eare after the Sunne set to the Hiue, and if you heare the Master-Bee aboue all the rest, in a higher and more solemne note, or if you see them lie forth vpon the stone, and cannot get into the Hiue, then be sure that stocke will cast within few houres after.

As soone as you can perceiue the swarme to rise, and are got vp into the ayre (which will commonly be in the height and heat of the Sun) you shall take a brasse Bason, Pan or Candlesticke, and making a rinckling noise thereupon, and they are so delighted with Musick, that by the sound therof, they will presently knit vpon some branch or bough of a tree. Then when they are all vpon one clustet, you shall take a new sweet Hiue well drest, and rub'd with *Hony* and *Fennell*, and shake them all into the Hiue, then hauing spread a faire sheet vpon the ground, set the Hiue thereon, and couer it all cleane ouer close with the sheet, and so let it stand till after Sunne-set, at which time the Bees being gathered vp to the top of the Hiue (as their nature is) you shall set them vpon the stone, hauing rub'd it well with *Fennell*, and then daube it close round about with *Lime* and *Dung* mixt together, and onely leaue them a dore or two to issue out and in at. There be some stockes which will cast twice or thrice, and foure times in a yeare, but it is not so good, for it will weaken the stocke too much, therefore to keepe your stockes in strength and goodnesse, it is good not to suffer any to cast aboue twice at the most. Again, you shall with pieces of Brick, or other smooth stones,

stones, raise the stocke in the night three or foure inches aboue the stone, and then daube it close againe, and the Bees finding house-roume will fall to worke within, and not cast at all; and then will that stocke be worth two others: and in the same manner, if you had the yeare before any small swarmes, which are likely to cast this yeare; or if you haue any carely swarmes this yeare, which are likely to cast at the latter end of the yeare: both which are often found to be the destruction of the stockes: in either of these cases, you shall enlarge the Hiue as it is before said, by raising it vp from the stone, and it will not onely keepe them from casting, but make the stocke better, and of much more profit, for that Hiue euer which is of the most waight is of the best price.

Now when you haue mark't out thole o'd stockes which you intend to sell, (for the oldest is fittest for that purpose) you shall know that the best time to take them, is at *Michaelmas*, before any frosts hinder their labour: and you shall take them euer from the stone in the darke of night, when the ayre is cold, and either drowne them in water, or smother them with *Fusels*, for to chase them from their Hives, as some doe is naught, because all such Bees as are thus frighted from their Hives doe turne robbers and spoyle other stocks, because that time of the yeare will not suffer them to labour and get their owne linings.

Of selling
hives.

Now if you haue any weake swarmes which comming late in the yeare cannot gather sufficient of Winter provision; in this case, you shall feede such stockes by daily smearing their stone before the place of their going in and out with *Hony* and *Rose-water* mixt together, and so you shall continue to doe all the strength of Winter, till the warmth of the Spring, and the Sunne-shine bring forth

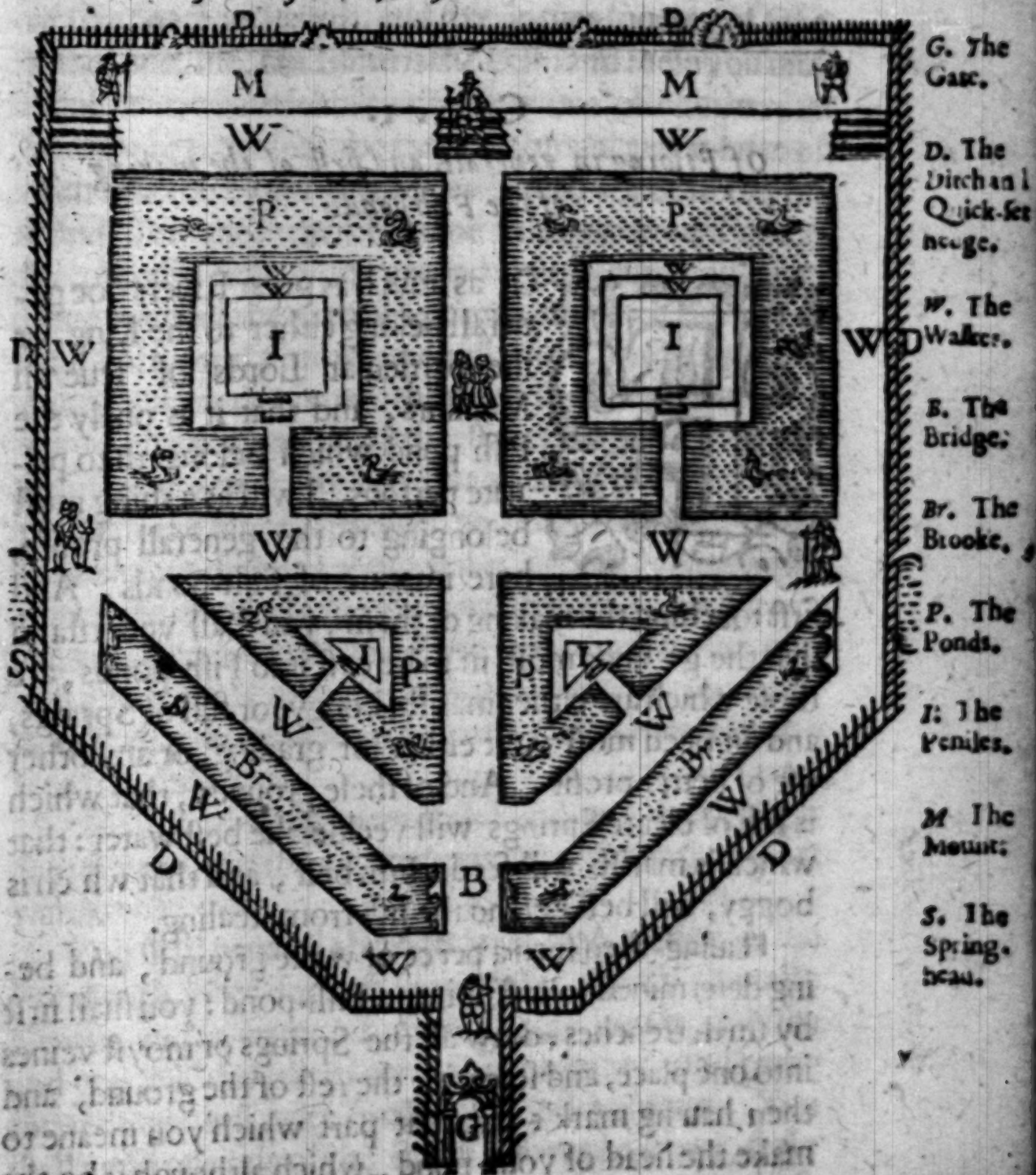
The preserua-
tion of weake
stocks.

soorth of Flowers for them to labour vpon. You shall continually looke that no Mice, Dares, and such like vermine breed about Hives, for they are poysonous, and will make Bees forsake their Hives.

Now lastly, if any of your stockes happen to dye in the Winter (as amongst many, some must quile) you shall not by any meanes stirre the stocke, but let it remaine till the Spring, that you see your Bees beginne to grow busie; then take vp the dead stocke, and trimme it cleane from all filth, but by no meanes stirre or crush any of the Combes: then dash the Combes, and besprinkle them, and besmeare all the inside of the Hieve with *Hony*, *Rose-mare*, and the iuyce of *Fennell*, mixt together, and daube all the stone therewith. Also then set downe the hieve againe, and daube it as if it had neuer bene stirred, and be well assured that the first Swarme which shall rise, either of your owne, or of any Neighbour of yours within the compasse of a mile, it will knit in no place, but within that hieve, and such a stocke will be worth five others, because they find halfe their worke finisht at their first entrance into the hieve, and this hath bene many times approued by those of the most approued experience. And thus much touching the Bee and his Nature.

Now if you haue any weakc swarms which cominge late in the yeare cannot gather sufficient of Winter provisions in this case, you shall neede such stockes by daily feeding them: first before the place of their going in and out with Wax and Ale's water mixt together, and to continue to doe all the first of Winter, till the warmth of the Spring, and the same thing being

A Platforme for Ponds, which the Printer hath added to this ensuing discourse, for the better satisfaction and delight of such as having a convenient plot of ground for the same purpose shall be desirous to make any Ponds for the increase and store of Fish.



The Walkes about the Ponds may be planted with Firre-trees or Willows.



Of Fishing.

CHAP. I.

Of Fishing in generall, and first of the making of the Fish pond.



Or as much as great Rivers doe generall belong either to the King, or the particular Lords of severall Mannors, and that it is onely the Fish pond which belongeth to private persons, I will as a thing most belonging to the generall profite, here intreate of Fish-ponds. And first touching the making of them, you shall vnderstand that the grounds most fit to be cast into Fish-ponds, are those which are either marish, boggy, or full of Springs, and in deed most vsit either for grazing, or any other vse of better profit. And of these grounds, that which is full of cleare Springs will yeelde the best water: that which is marish will feede Fish best, and that which is boggy, will best defend the fish from stealing.

Having then such a peece of waste ground, and being determined to cast it into a Fish-pond: you shall first by small trenches, draw all the Springs or moyst veines into one place, and so draine the rest of the ground, and then hauing mark'd out that part which you meane to make the head of your pond, which although it be the lowest

lowest part in the true leuell of the ground, yet you must make it the highest in the eye; you shall first cut the trench of your Flood-gate, so as the water may haue a swift fall, when you meane at any time to let it out; and then on each side of the trench driue in great stakes of sixe foote in length, and sixe inches square, of Oke, Ashe, or Elme, but Elme is the best; and these you must driue in rows within foure foote one of another, at least foure foote into the earth, as broad, and as farre off each side the Flood-gate as you intend the head of your Pond shall goe: then beginne to digge your Pond of such compasse as your ground will conueniently give leaue, and all the earth you digge out of the Pond, you shall carry and throw amongst the stakes, and with strong rammers ramme the earth hard betweene them till you haue couered all the stakes; then driue in as many moe new stakes besides the heads of the first, and then ramme more earth ouer and aboue them also; and thus doe, with stakes aboue stakes, till you haue brought the head sides to such a conuenient height as is fitting. And in all this worke haue an especiall care that you make the inside of your bankes so smooth, euen, and strong, that no current of the water may weare the earth from the stakes.

You shall digge your Fish Pond not aboue eight foote deepe, and so as it may carry not aboue sixe foote water.

You shall pane all the bottome, and bankes of the Pond with large sods of Flot-grasse, which naturally growes vnder water, for it is a great feeder of Fish; and you shall lay them very close together, and pinne them downe fast with small stakes and windings. You shall vpon one side of the Pond, in the bottome, stake

fast diuerſe Bauens or Faggots of bruiſh wood, wherein your fiſh ſhall caſt their ſpawne, for that will defend it from deſtruction; and at another place you ſhall lay ſods vpon ſods, with the graſſe ſides together, in the bottome of the Pond, for that will nourish and breed Eeles: and if you ſticke ſharpe ſtakes ſlant-wiſe by euery ſide of the Pond, that will keepe theeues from robbing them. When you haue thus made your Ponds, and haue let in the water, you ſhal then ſtore them. Carpe, Breame and Tench by themſelues: and Pike, Pearch, Eele, and Tench by themſelues: for the Tench being the Fiſhes Phyſition is ſeldome deuoured: alſo in all Ponds you ſhall put good ſtore of Roch, Dace, Loch, and Menow; for they are both food for the greater Fiſhes, and alſo not vncomely in any good mans diſh. You ſhal to euery melter put three Spawners, and ſome put five, and in three yeares the increaſe will be great, but in five hardly to bee deſtroyed. And thus much for Ponds and their ſtorings.

CHAP. II.

*Of the taking of all ſorts of Fiſh, with Nets,
or otherwiſe.*

IF you will take Fiſh with little or no trouble, you ſhall take of *Salarmoniacke* a quarter of an ounce, of young *Chines* as much, and as much of a *Calues Kell*, and beate them in a Morter vntill it be all one ſubſtance, and then make Pellets thereof, and caſt them into any corner of the Pond, and it wil draw thither all the Carpe, Breame, Cheuin, or Barbell, that are within the Water, then caſt your ſhoue-net beyond them, and you ſhall take choyle at your pleaſure. If you will take Roch, Dace, or any ſmall kinde of Fiſh, take Wine Lees and mixe it with Oyle, and hang it in a Chimney-corner, till it be drye, or
looke

looke blacke, and then putting it into the water, they will come so abundantly to it that you may take them with your hand. If you will take Trout, or Grailing, take two pound of Wheate-bran, halfe so much of white Pease, and mixing them with strong Brine, beate it till it come to a perfect paste; then put pellets thereof into any corner of the water, and they will resort thither, so as you may cast your net about them at your pleasure. But if you will take either Pearch or Pike, you shall take some of a beasts Liuer, blacke Snayles, yellow Butter-Flies, Hogges bloud, and Opoponax, beate them all together, and hauing made a paste thereof, put it into the water, and be assured that as many as are within fortie paces thereof will presently come thither, and you may take them at your pleasure.

Lastly, if you take eight drams of Cocke-stones, and twice so much of the kernels of Pynapple trees burnt, and beate them well together, and make round balles thereof, and put it into the water, either fresh or salt, any Salmon or great Fish will presently resort thither: and you may take them either with net or otherwise.

Also, it is a most approued experiment, that if you take bottles made of Hay, and greene Oziers, or Willow mixt together, and sincke them downe in the midst of your Pond, or by the banke sides, and so let them rest two or three daies, hauing a cord so fastened vnto them that you may twitch them vpon land at your pleasure: and beleeue it, all the good Eeles which are in the Pond wil come into those Bottles, & you shall take them most abundantly: and if you please to bait those bottles, by binding vp Sheepes guts, or other garbage of beastes within them, the Eeles will come sooner, and you may

may draw them oftner, and with better assurance. There be other wayes besides these to take Eccles, as with Weeles, with the Ecce-speare, or with bobbing for them with great wormes; but they are so generally knowne and practised, & so much inferiour to this already shewed, that I hold it a needlesse and vaine labour to trouble your cares with the repetition of the same; and the rather, sith in this worke I haue laboured onely to declare the secrets of euey knowledge, and not to runne into any large circumstance of those things which are most common and familiar to all men. And thus much of Fish and Fish-ponds, & their generall knowledge.

Now as touching the Angle and the secrets thereto belonging, you shall finde it at large handled in the next Booke

called *Countrie Con-
sentments.*

FINIS.



